Training Program on Application of Information and Communication Technology



Dr. MCRHRD INSTITUTE

Trademark Acknowledgement

All Products are registered trademarks of their respective organization. All software used is for training purpose only.

This book has been specially designed for imparting ICT Education to Government officials working in various departments in the Government of Andhra Pradesh.

Dr. MCRHRD IAP, Hyderabad designed and developed this courseware in English on "Computer Fundamentals & Office Applications". Copyright © Dr. MCRHRD IAP Hyderabad 2013. All Rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval, system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Content

1.	Introduction to Computers	1
	1.1. What is computer	1
	1.2. Characteristics of Computers	1
	1.3. Types of Computers	2
	1.4. Generations of Computer	2
	1.5. Components of Computer	3
	1.6 Networks	11
2.	Operating System: Windows 7	14
	2.1. Features	14
	2.2. Easier ways to work with windows	14
	2.3. Better Device Management	15
	2.4. Windows Home Group	15
3.	MS Office	17
	3.1. Introduction	17
	3.2. Ribbon	17
4.	MS Word 2010	18
4.	MS Word 2010 4.1. Interface Elements	18 18
4.		
4.	4.1. Interface Elements	18
4.	4.1. Interface Elements4.2. File Menu	18 21
4.	4.1. Interface Elements4.2. File Menu4.3. Auto Correct	18 21 22
4.	4.1. Interface Elements4.2. File Menu4.3. Auto Correct4.4. Home Tab	18 21 22 25
4.	 4.1. Interface Elements 4.2. File Menu 4.3. Auto Correct 4.4. Home Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 	18 21 22 25 29
4.	 4.1. Interface Elements 4.2. File Menu 4.3. Auto Correct 4.4. Home Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 4.6. Page Layout Tab 	18 21 22 25 29 43
4.	 4.1. Interface Elements 4.2. File Menu 4.3. Auto Correct 4.4. Home Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 4.6. Page Layout Tab 4.7. Mailings Tab 	18 21 22 25 29 43 48
4.	 4.1. Interface Elements 4.2. File Menu 4.3. Auto Correct 4.4. Home Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 4.6. Page Layout Tab 4.7. Mailings Tab 4.8. Review Tab 4.9. View Tab 	18 21 22 25 29 43 48 49
	 4.1. Interface Elements 4.2. File Menu 4.3. Auto Correct 4.4. Home Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 4.6. Page Layout Tab 4.7. Mailings Tab 4.8. Review Tab 4.9. View Tab 	18 21 22 25 29 43 48 49 51
	 4.1. Interface Elements 4.2. File Menu 4.3. Auto Correct 4.4. Home Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 4.6. Page Layout Tab 4.7. Mailings Tab 4.8. Review Tab 4.9. View Tab MS Excel 2010 	18 21 22 25 29 43 48 49 51 54
	 4.1. Interface Elements 4.2. File Menu 4.3. Auto Correct 4.4. Home Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 4.6. Page Layout Tab 4.7. Mailings Tab 4.8. Review Tab 4.9. View Tab 5.1 Spreadsheets 	18 21 22 25 29 43 48 49 51 54
	 4.1. Interface Elements 4.2. File Menu 4.3. Auto Correct 4.4. Home Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 4.5. Insert Tab 4.6. Page Layout Tab 4.7. Mailings Tab 4.8. Review Tab 4.9. View Tab 5.1 Spreadsheets 5.2 Introduction to Excel 2010 	18 21 22 25 29 43 48 49 51 54 54 55

	5.6 Insert Tab	69
	5.7 Page Layout Tab	70
	5.8 Formulas	70
	5.9 Data Tab	73
	5.10 Review Tab	75
	5.11 View Tab	76
	5.12 Charts	77
	5.13 Conditional formatting	79
	5.14 Data Validation	80
	5.15 Printing	81
6	Presentation Tool MS PowerPoint 2010	91
	6.1 Ribbon	91
	6.2 Create a new presentation	95
	6.3 Slide Views	105
	6.4 Apply Transition	132
	6.5 Presenting Slide Show	135
	6.6 Saving and Printing	141
	6.7 Word Art and Shapes	145
	6.8 Animating Text and Objects	161
7	Internet	199
	7.1 What is Internet	199
	7.2 What is www	199
	7.3 Web Browser	201
	7.4 Toolbars	202
	7.5 URL	203
	7.6 Domains	204
	7.7 Home Page and History	205
	7.8 The Cache	205
	7.9 Favorites	206
	7.10 How does Search Engine work	207
	7.11 Things To Be Cautious About The Internet	208

8	Introduction to Access 2010	210
8.1	Interface Elements	210
8.2	Working with Tables	219
8.3	Working with Queries	255
8.4	Creating Forms and Reports	295

Introduction to Computers

The present age may be termed as computer age because no other invention has revolutionized the world as much as the Electronic Digital Computers, commonly known as *computers*. Just in a short period of three decades, the computers have become indispensable in every sphere of human life.

The work area of computers is very exhaustive. There is hardly any area of development where computer applications have not set in. To illustrate a few, we can find their exhaustive use in organizations such as:

- Industries, business organizations
- Research establishments
- Educational institutions
- Government departments
- Hospitals
- Document centers
- Employment Exchanges
- Police departments
- Communication departments
- Service Organizations

1.1 What is a computer

A computer is a truly amazing machine that performs specified sequences of operations as per the set of instructions (known as programs) given on a set of data (input) to generate desired information (output). Being a machine, it will not perform independently or creatively. It will do only, what is instructed to do, in specific terms. It is based on a complex technology, but works on a simple principle as follows:

INPUT	PROCESS	ΟυΤΡυΤ

1.2 Characteristics of Computers

The characteristics of computers that have made them so powerful and universally useful are speed, accuracy, diligence, versatility and storage capacity. Let us discuss them briefly.

• **Speed-**Computers work at an incredible speed. A powerful computer is capable of performing about 3-4 million simple instructions per second.

- Accuracy-In addition to being fast, computers are also accurate. Errors that may occur can almost always be attributed to human error (inaccurate data, poorly designed system or faulty instructions/programs written by the programmer)
- **Diligence**-Unlike human beings, computers are highly consistent. They do not suffer from human traits of boredom and tiredness resulting in lack of concentration. Computers, therefore, are better than human beings in performing voluminous and repetitive jobs.
- Versatility-Computers are versatile machines and are capable of performing any task as long as it can be broken down into a series of logical steps. The presence of computers can be seen in almost every sphere – Railway/Air reservation, Banks, Hotels, Weather forecasting and many more.
- **Storage Capacity**-Today's computers can store large volumes of data. A piece of information once recorded (or stored) in the computer, can never be forgotten and can be retrieved almost instantaneously.

1.3 Types of Computers

- **Digital** A Digital computer uses digital technology. It processes digital quantities that attain discrete values. Most computers used for information processing are of this type.
- **Analog** An Analog computer is designed to process continuous physical quantities. Examples of analog computer usage include monitoring temperature, voltage and current reading in a power station. Each of these parameters can attain an infinite number of values, not just simple on and off.

1.4 Generation of Computers

The evolution of computers has passed through a number of stages before it reached the present state. From the early 1950s, growth of the computers was very rapid but this development took distinct phases known as generation of computers. They represented improvement in speed, memory, input and output devices and programming techniques. Different generations are characterized by their technology of basic computing elements.

- **First Generation** -The first generation computers were the voluminous computers. These computers used electronic valves (vacuum tubes) and had the main limitations of very large electric power consumption and very little reliability.
- Second Generation-The invention of transistor in 1948 (invented at Bell Laboratories, USA) led to the development of second-generation computers. Transistors replaced the valves (vacuum tubes) completely as they were far more superior in performance on account of their miniature size, smaller power consumption and less expensive.

- Third Generation-These computers use integrated circuits (ICs) in place of transistors and they were having higher speed, large storage capacities and less expensive. An integrated circuit arranges thousands of switches on circuit boards known as a chip. These machines used more versatile program like Multi Programming Techniques and Database Management.
- Fourth Generation -Due to development of large scale integrated chips known as microprocessor chips in 1971 by Intel Corporation, another breed became popular as fourth generation computers. The fourth generation of computers is marked with the increased speed retrieval capabilities and facilities for communication. They can be connected with the satellite communication lines to transform information from one part of the world to the other part of the world at a very high speed. These machines used advanced software like process controllers, computer aided design, electronic spreadsheet etc.
- **Fifth Generation**-These machines will use parallel processing techniques and artificial intelligence techniques. Therefore these computers will be able to think as human beings can think. These machines will be able to process non-numerical data such as pictures, graphs etc. They will use new types of integrated circuits for faster speed of operation. These machines are under development.

The Revolution in computer technology

Computers are also available in different sizes and in different capabilities. They may be categorized as Personal Computers, Micro Computers, Mini Computers, Mainframe Computers and Super Computers.

Personal Computers are being upgraded from time to time depending on the microprocessor configuration from Pentium-I to Pentium IV. New processor technology like Dual Core Processors, Intel Core 2 duo and Quad Core processors has enhanced the computing power of Personal/Desktop computers to many folds.



PC stands for Personal Computer

1.5 Components of a computer

A computer system has mainly two components, namely Hardware and Software. Hardware refers to the physical units of computer, which includes all electronic and electric circuitry components and devices. Anything, which you see or touch, is considered as hardware. Software is a set of instructions that makes the hardware work to get desired results.

<u>Hardware</u>

Hardware may be described under the following categories:

- Input devices
- Process unit
- Output devices
- Storage devices

Input devices- Input devices accept data and instructions from the user. Examples are:

- Keyboard
- Mouse
- Joystick
- Light Pen
- Optical/magnetic Scanner
- Touch Screen
- Microphone for voice as input

Keyboard- A keyboard is the most common input device and is used for all kinds of computers – Main, Mini and Macros. Several kinds of keyboards are available but they resemble each other with minor variations. The keyboard in most common use is the QWERTY board. IBM and IBM compatible PCs use 101 keyboard, so called since they have 101 keys. The cursor control keys are duplicated to allow easier use of the numeric pad. Several attractive keyboards are available in the market with some additional keys for opening windows start menu, internet explorer etc.



Keyboard Operations

- Typing keys The part of the keyboard which is used to type letters, numbers and other characters. The alphabets layout resembles a standard typewriter keyboard exactly, how- ever there some extra keys for entering commands, e.g. Ctrl key, Alt key, Shift key, Enter key etc. On most keyboards these extra keys are gray in color whereas the alphabet, number, symbol and punctuation keys are white in color. The Ctrl, Alt and Shift key is always used in conjunction with some other key.
- Shift and Caps Lock key -The Shift key is used to type capital letters i.e. if you want to type the letter "F", you have to press the Shift key, keep in pressed with one finger and press "f" key with the other. However, if you want to type an entire word or a sentence in capital letters, use the Caps Lock key instead. Unlike the Shift key, Caps Lock key is a toggle key and does not need to be pressed continuously. Press it once and it becomes On (you will see the Caps Lock indicator on the keyboard lighting up when you do this) and thereafter whatever you type would be in capital letters, press it again and becomes Off.
- Function keys-The row of 10-12 keys-F1 to F12 above the typing keys are called the function keys and are used to execute special commands or as shortcut keys. The use of these keys varies program to program, however within MS Office some degree of standardization has been achieved. In Word, the function keys are used alone or together with the Shift, Alt and Ctrl keys to give commands.

- Cursors control keys- A group of special keys used control and navigate the cursor arrow keys (Up ↑, Down ↓, Left ←, Right →). Home and End are used to quickly place the cursor. In the beginning or end of a line. To delete an alphabet to the left of the cursor press the Backspace key ← (normally above the Enter key), to delete an alphabet to the right of the cursor press the Del key.
- Numeric keypad-The keys on the extreme right of the keyboard (resembling a calculator's key board), which can be used both to enter numbers (when the Num Lock is On) or to move the cursor (When the Num Lock is Off). The Num Lock is located above the number 7 (Home) key on the Numeric keypad and its On or Off status is displayed by the Num Lock indicator light on your keyboard. Since Num Lock is also a toggle key, pressing it once make is On and pressing it again makes it Off.

Note: Press the keys briefly with a light pressure, unless you want repeated characters.

> The Most Important Keys-

- Alt and Ctrl- The command keys are used in combination with another key or with the mouse. For example the Alt + F4 key combination (press down the Alt key, hold it down and press the F4 function key briefly and then release both) close the program.
- ✓ Shift-Like Alt and Ctrl, the Shift key is also used in commands in combination with other keys. In typing, it is used in the same way as on a typewriter – to produce capital letters.
- Enter-When typing text, press Enter when you want to produce a forced line feed (e.g. at the end of a paragraph and to create blank lines). Enter is also used in combination with other keys to execute a few commands. On some keyboards, this key is named Return instead of Enter.
- ✓ Esc-The Esc key is located to the left of the function keys, in upper left corner of the keyboard. It can be used to make a Cancel selection in a menu.
- ✓ **Backspace**-Pressing this key deletes the character to the left of the cursor.
- ✓ **Del (Delete)** -This key deletes the character to the right of the cursor.

Mouse- A mouse is an electro-mechanical, hand-held device. It is used as a pointer to:

- Select menu commands
- Move icons
- Size windows
- Start programs, and
- Choose options.



An optical mouse is an advanced computer pointing device that uses a light-emitting diode (LED), an optical sensor, and digital signal processing (DSP) in place of the traditional mouse ball and electromechanical transducer. Movement is detected by sensing changes in reflected light, rather than by interpreting the motion of a rolling sphere.

Movement of the mouse is maintained via an input port connected to the computer. Many programmes today are designed to work with a mouse. A mouse is used to replace hard-to-learn key combinations with easier "Point and Click" actions.

Mouse Operations-

- > **Pointing -** Move the mouse pointer until the pointer is on the desired item.
- Clicking- Move the mouse pointer to the position you want, then press the mouse left button once.
- Double-clicking-Move the mouse pointer to the position you want, then press the mouse left button twice in rapid succession. Alternatively, if your mouse has been so installed, you can also click the middle button once, instead of pressing the left button twice.
- Right-clicking- In some cases like changing the properties of an object, or for correcting a misspell word, or even for cut, copy and past-the mouse right button can be used. In such cases, simply select the object and click once on the mouse right button.
- Dragging-Move the mouse pointer to the right place, highlight the desired text by clicking once in the beginning and releasing the left button at the end, then click once again in the highlighted block, keep the mouse left button pressed and roll the mouse to mouse to move the block to a new location by releasing the left button at the desired location.

At first, using the mouse many be difficult (particularly double-clicking and dragging). However, learning to use it is worth the trouble because many of the advanced tools in modern programs are only operated with the mouse. In any case most operations are much more simpler and faster to execute through the mouse rather than through the keyboard.

Processor - The complex procedure that transforms raw input data into useful information for output is called **processing**. To perform this transform, the computer uses two components, the *processor* and *memory*.

The processor is the "brain" of the computer, the part that interprets and carries out instructions. In large computers, the processor often comprises a number of chips whereas in small computers called Microcomputers or personal computers (PC's), the processor is a single silicon chip, called a microprocessor.

Intel[®] Core[™] i7 Processor

Performance/Features:

- 8 processing threads via Intel" Hyper-Threading Technology (Intel" HT)
- 4 cores
- Intel^{*} Turbo Boost Technology operation
- Intel[®] QuickPath Interconnect (Intel[®] QPI) to Intel[®] X58 Express Chipset
- Integrated Memory Controller (IMC) – 3ch DDR3
- 7 more SSE4 instructions
- Overspeed Protection Removed



Socket:

New LGA1366 Socket
 Power:

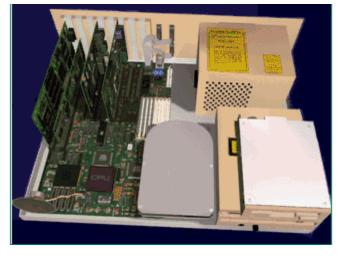
- 130W TDP
- VRD 11.1

Platform Compatibility:

- Intel[®] X58 Express Chipset
- ICH10 / ICH10R

Targeted Segment:

- Extreme and performance demanding users
- Ultimate gaming, multimedia creation, compute intensive applications



and around the computer.

The term central processing unit (CPU) is used loosely to refer to a computer's processor whether it is a set of chips or a single microprocessor. Every CPU has two basic parts, the control unit (CU) and the Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU). The control unit manages all the computer resources and coordinates all the computer's activities. It contains the basic instructions (called firmware) for execution of programs. The instruction set, built into the circuitry of the control unit, is a list of all the operations that the CPU can perform. In fact, the Control Unit can be thought of as a traffic cop, directing the flow of data around the CPU

• **Memory-** The data fed to the computer stays stored in the memory, as and when the data is required to be processed or operated upon, it is transferred to the Arithmetic Logic Unit which does all the computation work like addition, subtraction etc. After processing, the data is again brought back and stored in the memory.

The unit of memory is byte which is combination of 8 bits.

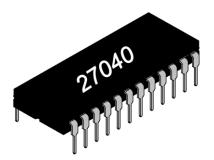
1024 bytes	1 Kilo byte
1024 Kilo bytes	1 Mega byte
1024 Mega bytes	1 Giga byte
1024 Giga bytes	1 Terra byte

There are two types of memories:

MAIN MEMORY (RAM) - The main memory is Random Access Memory (RAM). The name derives from the fact that data can be stored in and retrieved at random, from anywhere. Main memory is in volatile state. When the computer is off, main memory is empty; when it is on, main memory is capable of receiving and holding a copy of the software instructions and data necessary for processing. Because main memory is a volatile form of storage and the users might lose any unsaved information, hence user often stores their work on devices such as floppy disks or hard disks.



READ ONLY MEMORY (ROM) – Instruction to perform such operations, which are critical to the operation of a computer are stored permanently on a read-only memory (ROM) chip installed by the manufacturer inside the computer. When the power in the computer is turned off, the instructions stored in ROM are not lost and the data cannot be changed.



 Arithmetic and Logic Unit -All the calculations are performed and all comparisons (decisions) are made in the Arithmetic and Logic Unit (ALU) of the CPU. No processing occurs in the primary storage. Intermediate results generated are temporarily placed in a designated working storage area until needed at a later time. Data may thus move from one primary storage to the ALU and back again to store at many times before processing is finished. Once completed, the final results are released to an output storage section and from there to an output device. The type and number of Arithmetic Logic operations a computer can perform are determined by the design of the CPU.

- **Control Unit** The Control Unit, as the very name implies, controls the movement and operates within the CPU. Based on the instructions given CPU ensures the operations as specified in the program are performed in the sequence. This operation may be receipt of data and storing them at specified locations, transfer of data from one address of memory to another, transfer of data from Memory to the Arithmetic Unit, controlling the Arithmetic Unit to memory from there on to the output.
- **Output Devices-** After the computer has processed the data, the final result has to be brought out from the machine in some intelligent and readable form. The result that comes out of the machine is called output and the equipment which enables the results to be brought out are termed output devices.

The common output devices are:

- Monitor
- TV
- LCD Projector
- Printer

Monitor- Monitor is an output device with the help of which a user can see the results produced by the computer. It is also called as Visual Display Unit (VDU) available in different sizes. The quality of the display depends on the screen resolution. We have CRT(Cathode Ray tube) and LCD(Liquid Crystal Display) Monitors. LCD monitors are very popular monitors now.



Printers- Printers are very useful in day-to-day life to take a hardcopy of our work. There are different types of printers based on the quality and printing speed at which they print.

The popular models are:

- Dot matrix
- Inkjet
- LaserJet
- ≻ Line

External Storage Devices

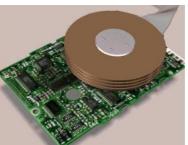
Floppy diskettes, hard disk and tapes come under the category of external storage devices or ancillary storage devices.

 Compact Disc -It is a magnetic storage media, with very high capacity of storage approximately 650 MB. Data on a CD is more reliable. CD Drives are different for reading and writing of a CD.While combo drives with DVD/CD RW/CD drives are



storming the market at a very affordable price, storing data on CDs becoming common now a days.

• **Hard Disc** - It is also magnetic storage media, using flat, circular platters, which rotate at a very high speed. The high speed ensures that all areas of the disk appear under the read/write at frequently intervals. The physical size and storage capabilities of hard disk now available are 40 MB on a personal computer itself.



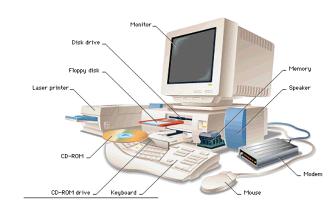
• Pen Drive/USB Flash Drive- A USB flash drive consists of a flash memory data storage device integrated with a USB (UniversalSerial Bus) 1.1 or 2.0 interface. USB flash drives are typically removable and rewritable, and much smaller than a floppy disk.

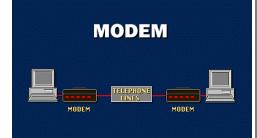


- Modem- A modem enables your computer to receive/send data from/to remote places through telephone lines, provided each has a compatible modem. These are attached to serial port of the computer. Modems are used for: On-line services like
- electronic mail,
- banking
- travel reservations
- file transfers
- ➢ fax services

A modem is controlled by using a communication program

Personal Computer – the complete setup





The device used to connect a computer to a phone line is called a "modem", short for modulator-demodulator.

<u>Software -</u> Software is the set of instructions to make computer work in the way we like. Set of instructions is called Programmes. Software is a general term to describe all the forms of programs associated with computer.

Software is of two types:

- System Software
- Application Software

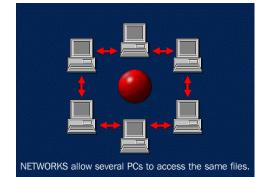
System Software- Set of programs (consists of number of instructions) supplied by manufacturer to make the computer work. This software coordinates the functioning of different parts of the computer.

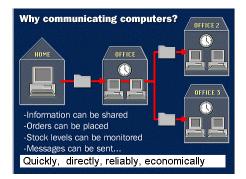
- Operation Systems These programmes are in-built into the computer resources such as processors, memory and input/output devices. They, in fact act as an interface between the user's programmes and the computer like a supervisor controlling the performance of the computer. Editor and other utilities help in creation and modification of information in the computer. There are many operating systems like Windows 98, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows NT, Sun Solaris, Mac OS, Linux are few to name.
- Application Software- Application programmes are user-written programmes to perform certain specific jobs. They are unique in their construction and can be used only for identical jobs. Many such application programmes have been made commercially available as PACKAGES. They can be changed marginally to fit individual needs and to meet the system requirements. Standard packages for application areas such as Payroll, Financial Accounting, Inventory Control, billing etc., are available. ERP (Enterprise Resource Planning) packages are playing very important role in large-scale industries or organizations which improve highly, the quality of Administration, Production and Planning in inventory etc. Some of such packages are BAAN, People Soft, and Oracle Financials etc.

As we communicate in different languages like Telugu, Hindi, English etc. We have to communicate with the computer in the language, which it can understand. Through these computer understandable languages we tell the computer to perform various jobs. Some of the commonly used languages are C,C++, Java etc,

These languages are similar to English and are easily understandable by all. The instructions look like ADD, READ, and WRITE etc. Because they are easily understandable they are called "HIGH LEVEL LANGUAGES". Instructions written in high level languages are converted into computer understandable form by a system programme known as COMPILER. These instructions are said to be in low-level languages.

1.6 NETWORKS



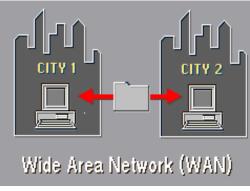


Computers can communicate with other computers through a series of connections and associated hardware called a network. The advantage of a network is that data can be exchanged rapidly, and software and hardware resources, such as hard-disk space or printers, can be shared.

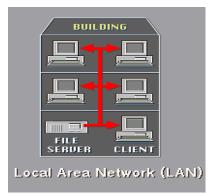
One type of network, a local area network (LAN), consists of several PCs or workstations connected to a special computer called the server. The server stores and manages programs and data. A server often contains all of a networked group's data and enables LAN workstations to be set up without storage capabilities to reduce cost.

Mainframe computers and supercomputers commonly are networked. They may be connected to PCs, workstations, or terminals that have no computational abilities of their own. These "dumb" terminals are used only to enter data into, or receive output from, the central computer.

Wide area networks (WANs) are networks that span large geographical areas. Computers can connect to these networks to use facilities in another city or country.



Layers of Networks



A network has three layers components: application software, network software, and network hardware. Application software consists of computer programs that interface with network users and permit the sharing of information, such as files, graphics, and video, and resources, such as printers and disks. One type of application software is called client-server. Client computers send requests for information or requests to use resources to other computers, called servers, that control data and applications. Another type of application software is called peer-to-peer. In a peer-to-peer network, computers send messages and requests directly to one another without a server intermediary.

Network software consists of computer programs that establish protocols, or rules, for computers to talk to one another. These protocols are carried out by sending and receiving formatted instructions of data called packets. Protocols make logical connections between network applications, direct the movement of packets through the physical network, and minimize the possibility of collisions between packets sent at the same time.

Network hardware is made up of the physical components that connect computers. Two important components are the transmission media that carry the computer's signals, typically on wires or fiber-optic cables, and the network adapter, which accesses the physical media that link computers, receives packets from network software, and transmits instructions and requests to other computers. Transmitted information is in the form of binary digits, or bits (1s and 0s), which the computer's electronic circuitry can process.

A network has two types of connections: physical connections that let computers directly transmit and receive signals and logical, or virtual, connections that allow computer applications, such as word processors, to exchange information. Physical connections are defined by the medium used to carry the signal, the geometric arrangement of the computers (topology), and the method used to share information. Logical connections are created by network protocols

and allow data sharing between applications on different types of computers, such as an Apple Macintosh and an International Business Machines Corporation (IBM) personal computer (PC), in a network. Some logical connections use client-server application software and are primarily for file and printer sharing. The Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) suite, originally developed by the United States Department of Defense, is the set of logical connections used by the Internet, the worldwide consortium of computer networks. TCP/IP, based on peer-to-peer application software, creates a connection between any two computers.

Media

The medium used to transmit information limits the speed of the network, the effective distance between computers, and the network topology. Copper wires and coaxial cable provide transmission speeds of a 100 Mbps to 1 Gbps for short distances. Optical fibers carry 1 Gbps to 10 Gbps of information over long distances.

Topology

Common topologies used to arrange computers in a network are point-to-point, bus, star, and ring. Point-to-point topology is the simplest, consisting of two connected computers. The bus topology is composed of a single link connected to many computers. All computers on this common connection receive all signals transmitted by any attached computer. The star topology connects many computers to a common hub computer. This hub can be passive, repeating any input to all computers similar to the bus topology, or it can be active, selectively switching inputs to specific destination computers. The ring topology uses multiple links to form a circle of computers. Each link carries information in one direction. Information moves around the ring in sequence from its source to its destination.

Operating System: Windows 7

Windows 7 is an operating system produced by Microsoft for use on personal computers, including home and business desktops, laptops, netbooks, tablet PCs, and media center PCs

2.1 Features - Here's a look at some of the new features in Windows 7.

- Faster, more responsive performance Nobody likes to wait. So we've focused on the basics that can impact the speed of your PC. Windows 7 starts up, shuts down, resumes from sleep, and responds faster.
- Improved taskbar and full-screen previews-You can use the taskbar at the bottom of your screen to switch between open programs. In Windows 7 you can set the order of the taskbar icons and they'll stay in that order. The icons are larger, too. If you point to an icon, you'll see a small, preview version of the page or program. If you point to this preview, you'll see a full-screen preview. To open a program or file, click an icon or one of the previews.
- **Better on laptops -** Windows 7 helps extend the battery life of your laptop with powersaving features, including dimming the display if you don't use your computer for a while. Another new laptop-friendly feature, location-aware printing, can automatically switch your default printer when you go from home to school or work.
- **Jump Lists** With Jump Lists, you can quickly find files that you've worked with recently. Right-click a program icon on the taskbar to see a list of recently-opened files. You can also pin files that you use regularly to a Jump List. Some Jump Lists show commands for common tasks, like playing music or videos.
- Find more things faster with improved search -Thanks to an improved search, you can find more things in more places—and do it faster—than in previous versions of Windows. Just type a few letters into the search box to see a list of relevant items, such as documents, pictures, music, and e-mail. Search results are grouped by category and contain highlighted keywords to make them easy to scan.

Few people store all their files in one place anymore. Windows 7 is designed to search hard drives, PCs on a network, and other locations. It also speeds up your search by displaying recommendations based on previous queries. Overwhelmed by the results? New dynamic filters can instantly narrow results by categories such as date or file type.

2.2 Easier ways to work with windows

Windows 7 simplifies how you work with the windows on your desktop. You have more intuitive ways to open, close, resize, and arrange them.

Maximize a window by dragging its border to the top of the screen, and return the window to its original size by dragging it away from the top of the screen. Drag the bottom border of a window to expand it vertically.

To compare the contents of two windows, drag the windows to opposite sides of the screen. Each window will resize to fill half of the screen.

To see all of your desktop gadgets, drag your mouse to the lower-right corner of your desktop. The open windows will turn transparent, making your desktop and the gadgets on it, immediately visible. Want to minimize all open windows? One click and it's done. If you've moved your taskbar, you can drag your mouse to a different corner of the desktop to make open windows transparent.

2.3 Better device management

- **Devices and Printers** In the past, you had to go to different places in Windows to manage different types of devices. In Windows 7, there's a single Devices and Printers location for connecting, managing, and using your printers, phones, and other devices. From here, you can interact with your devices, browse files, and manage settings. When you connect devices to your PC, you'll be up and running in just a few clicks.
- **Device Stage** -Device Stage helps you manage cell phones, cameras, printers, MP3 players, and other devices connected to your computer. When you plug in a compatible device, you'll see its status and a list of popular tasks. You'll even see a picture of your device.

2.4 Windows HomeGroup

Windows HomeGroup makes it easier to connect to other computers running Windows 7 so you can share files, photos, music, and printers throughout your home. You choose what to share with other members of your homegroup.

• Theme packages reflect your style - With Windows 7, you start with a clean desktop and get to decide how it looks. We provide the templates, or themes, and you can choose the color or format.

New theme packages include rich backgrounds, 16 window colors, sound schemes, and screen savers. You can download new themes and create your own to share with friends and family. There are plenty of ways to make it yours.

- **Take control of problems -** In Windows 7 you get to choose the messages you want to see. Action Center consolidates notifications from multiple Windows features, including Windows Defender. When Windows 7 needs your attention, you'll see an Action Center icon in the notification area and can find out more by clicking it. No time to look at the alert right away? Action Center will keep the information for you to check later.
- Share music and videos -After your pictures, videos, and music are all on your computer, it's natural to want to share them with other computers in your home. Windows 7 introduces new media sharing and streaming features that make your PC a great home entertainment hub. HomeGroup makes it easy to share music, pictures, and video with other computers running Windows 7.

With another new feature called "Play to," you can play your digital media on other devices in your home.

- Introducing Windows Touch Using a keyboard and mouse are great for many tasks, but they aren't always the easiest way to do things. If you've got a touchscreen, you can just touch your computer screen for a more direct and natural way to work. Use your fingers to scroll and zoom. Large touch-sensitive areas on the Start menu and the taskbar make Windows Touch easier to use.
- Better Tablet PC support -Handwriting recognition takes a big step in Windows 7. Beginning with greater accuracy and speed, Windows 7 improves pen input in several ways. You can create personalized custom dictionaries for handwriting recognition and use the new languages supported in Windows 7. You can also use the new Math Input Panel to write math expressions. Or, just make a quick list on a Sticky Note using the tablet pen.

MS-Office 2010

3.1 Introduction

Microsoft Office is a proprietary commercial office suite of inter-related application. Office contains Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, and Microsoft PowerPoint and other applications. Microsoft Office 2010 displays commands in a series of icons stored on different tabs. This combination of icons and tabs is known as the Ribbon interface.

3.2 Ribbon

A **ribbon** is an interface where a set of toolbars are placed on tabs in a tab bar. The Ribbon interface simplifies the way you find and work with tools and options in Office.

File Home	Insert Page Lavout References Mailing	s Review
and the second s		
Palati	no Linotyr - 11 - A A A Aa- 😬 🗄 - 🗎	
Paste J B	I U - abe x, x ¹ 🔼 - 🔧 - 📐 - 🔳 =	
Clipboard G	Add Group to Quick Access Toolbar	Paragra
	Sustomize Quick Access Toolbar	
	Show Quick Access Toolbar Below the Ribbon	
	 Customize the Ribbon 	
	Minimize the Bibbon	
	Migimize the Ribbon	

- **Ribbon Tabs** Each tab provides a set of tools related to an overall task you are likely to be performing in a specific application. In Word 2010 tabs are File, Home, Insert, Page Layout, References, Mailings, Review, and View; In Excel tabs are File, Insert, Page Layout, Formulas, Data, Review, and View.
- **Ribbon Groups** Within each tab are groups that help organize common commands to help you quickly find what you need for a specific task. For example, on the Insert tab in Word 2010, you'll find Picture, Clip Art, Shapes, SmartArt, Chart, and Screenshot in the Illustrations group.
- **Galleries-** A down-arrow appears to the right of some options in groups. Clicking the down-arrow display a gallery of options you can select or a list of additional choices.
- **Backstage View-** The Ribbon contains the set of commands for working in a document, while the Microsoft Office Backstage view is the set of commands you use to do things to a document. Open a document, and click the File tab to see the Backstage view. The Backstage view is where you manage your documents and related data about them.

The File tab takes you to Microsoft Office Backstage view, which gives you a central place to work with the files you create in Office 2010 applications.

MICROSOFT WORD 2010

A word processor is a computer application used for the production, composition, editing, formatting, and printing of different types of documents. There are many software packages to do the job of word processing. Some of the popular Word-Processing soft wares are Microsoft Word, Microsoft Works, and Lotus Word Pro etc.

Microsoft Word is a word processing program from Microsoft Corporation which can be used to prepare many types of documents.

The following symbol is the identification of MS-Word icon



4.1 Interface elements

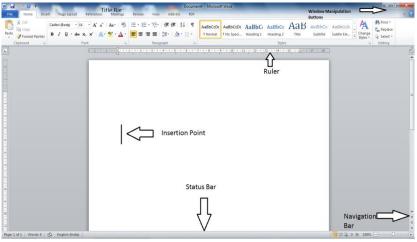
- Window manipulation buttons Used to minimize, maximize or close a window
- Title Bar- Includes a document name, extension (.docx) and a program name

Tabs		
Ribbon Tab Name	Command Groups	
File	Has the buttons Save, Save as has folders open, close and has sections Info, Recent, New, Print, Save & Send, and Help.	
Home	Clipboard, Font, Paragraph, Styles, and Editing	
Insert	Pages, Tables, Illustrations, Links, Header and Footer, Text, and Symbols	
Page Layout	Themes, Page Setup, Page Background, Paragraph, and Arrange	
References	Table of Contents, Footnotes, Citation and Bibliography, Captions, Index, and Table of Contents	
Mailings	Create, Start Mail Merge, Write and Insert Fields, Preview Results, and Finish	
Review	Proofing, Language, Comments, Tracking, Changes, Compare, and Project	
View	Document Views, Show, Zoom, Window, and Macros	

File Home Insert Page Layout Ref	eferences	Mailings Review View Add	-Ins Acrobat	۵ (2)
			AaBbCc AaBbCc AaBbC AaBbC	A Find ▼
Paste → B <i>I</i> <u>U</u> → abe × ₂ × ² ▲ → ³	2 - <u>A</u> - [▐▋▝▋▝▋▏\$≣▖▏▓▖▖▋▖	¶ Normal ¶ No Spaci Heading 1 Heading 2 ₹ Change Styles	
Clipboard 🕞 Font	Es.	Paragraph 🕞	Styles	Editing

• Toolbars

- Certain commands are hidden. The arrow in their lower right corner is indicative of hidden elements. When clicked, additional options are displayed
- > Tools that cannot be applied to a selected object are greyed out
- Tools displayed with three dots, if pressed, lead to another sequence of commands tabs and toolbars form the Ribbon
- **Insertion point-**A position in the document where the cursor is flashing
- Horizontal and vertical navigation bars (sliders)-Double-arrow jumps up / down one page (to the next - previous page)
- **Status Bar** Displays information about the current insertion point position in a document as well as the condition of some special Microsoft Word functions
- **Rulers-Include** a horizontal and a vertical ruler located above and to the left of the interface. The white area indicates the area of writing; the grey area represents the margins.



SELECT TEXT

Prior to text formatting, first you have to select it.

- Arbitrary text selection:
 - Press and hold down the left mouse button, move the mouse from the beginning to the end of the text that you want to select and then release the left mouse button
 - Place the insertion point at the beginning of a text that you want to select, press and hold down the Shift key and then press the left mouse button at the end of the desired selection. Afterwards, release all buttons.
- Select a word- Double click the left mouse button anywhere in a word
- Select one sentence-Hold down the Ctrl key and press the left mouse button anywhere in a sentence.
- **Select a single line-** Press the left mouse button in the left margin space of the line (the cursor will change to a right-pointing white arrow).

- **Select multiple lines-** Press and hold down the left mouse button in the left margin of the row, move up or down the rows you want to select and release the mouse button
- Select non-neighbouring lines-In the left margin space, press the Ctrl button + the left mouse button onto the desired lines.
- **Select a paragraph-**Double click the left mouse button in the left margin space or triple click the left mouse button anywhere in a paragraph
- Select the whole document-Triple click the left mouse button in the left margin of a document or use the keyboard shortcut Ctrl + A.

COPY AND MOVE TEXT WITHIN AND BETWEEN OPEN DOCUMENTS

- Copy / Paste:
 - Select text that you want to copy
 - > Copy the selected text by using the copy tool (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + C)
 - Position the cursor to the place where you want the text to be copied
 - Paste the text by using the paste tool (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + V)
 - > From the Home tab, locate the Clipboard panel
 - Click the Copy item
 - Move your cursor to the place where you want to paste your text



- > Click the first of the three items, just above Paste Special, to do a simple paste:
- > Your text is pasted to the new position.

• Copy text by using the drag-and-drop method

- Select text that you wish to copy
- Press and hold down the left mouse button over the selected text and press and hold down the Ctrl key.
- > Drag the mouse over to the place where you want the selected text to be copied.
- > Release the left mouse button and the Ctrl key.
- > The text is copied to a new location.

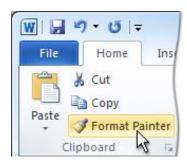
• Cut / Paste:

Select text that you want to cut

- > Cut the selected text by using the Cut tool (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + X.
- > Position the cursor to the place where you want to move the text
- Paste the text by using the Paste tool (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + V)
- Move the text by using the drag-and-drop method The same as copying, but without the usage of the Ctrl key.
- Format Painter tool It is used to copy formatting from one part of the text to another.

You can use the **Format Painter** on the **Home** tab to apply text formatting and some basic graphics formatting, such as borders and fills.

- Select the text or graphic that has the formatting that you want to copy.
- On the Home tab, in the Clipboard group, click Format Painter.



The pointer changes to a paintbrush icon.

- Select the text or graphic that you want to format.
- To stop formatting, press ESC.

DELETE TEXT

- Letter by letter:
 - > The Delete key deletes text that is located to the right of the cursor's position;
 - The Backspace key deletes text located to the left of the cursor
- The faster way to delete text:
- Select the desired text and press the Delete key.
- In order to undo the changes that you have done, use the Undo command, whereas to undo the undo changes, use the Redo command.
- By clicking on the arrow next to the one of the above mentioned tools, a drop-down menu opens with a list of all the actions done.

4.2 FILE MENU

The File menu allows you the following actions:

• Create a new document: New > Blank document > Create (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + N)

• Click the File tab.



- Click New.
- Double-click Blank document.
- Open an existing document: By using the Open command (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + O)
- Open more than one document: By using the Ctrl key (for adjacent files) or the Shift key (for non-adjacent files)
- Save a document: Use the Save key (keyboard shortcut Ctrl + S)
- When the file is saved for the first time, the Save As dialog box appears with the following fields:

Save in - enter the location of the folder where the document will be saved

4.3 AutoCorrect

- AutoCorrect in Word is a feature that is used to correct typing and misspellings and also to substitute the characters you type for symbols.
- AutoCorrect is set up by default with a list of *typical* misspellings and symbols that uses commonly make, but can be modified.
- Using Word's AutoCorrect is also for typing out long pieces of text, too.
- For example, set up the abbreviation MCR HRD IAP in the AutoCorrect list to be substituted by MarriChanna Reddy Human Resource Development Institute of Andhra Pradesh.
- Once set up, each time you type "MarriChanna Reddy Human Resource Development Institute of Andhra Pradesh" and press the spacebar, those letters will be replaced by "MarriChanna Reddy Human Resource Development Institute of Andhra Pradesh".
- The AutoCorrect list is global across all the Microsoft Office 2010 programs that support this feature.

AutoCorrect Options

Click the File tab \rightarrow Options \rightarrow Proofing, and then click the *AutoCorrect Options* button near the top of the window.

General	Change how Word corrects and formats your text.
Display	Change now word conects and normals your text.
Proofing	AutoCorrect options

The AutoCorrect window has many tabs, but when it opens, it will display the AutoCorrect tab. The options at the top are basically a list of yes/no questions in the form of checkboxes, described as follows:

utoCorrect: English	(U.K.)		? 🔀		
AutoFormat			Actions		
AutoCorrect	Math AutoCorrect		AutoFormat As You Type		
Show AutoCorre	Show AutoCorrect Options buttons				
Correct TWo INi	tial CApitals		Exceptions		
🔽 Capitalize first le	etter of sentences				
Capitalize first le	etter of table cells				
Capitalize name	-				
	tal usage of cAPS LOCK	kev			
	i th: ⊚ Plain text ─	Forma	atted text		
	D -		<u>^</u>		
(e) € (r) 0	E RO				
	M				
:(🤇	3				
☑ Automatically us	e suggestions from the	spellin			
			OK Cancel		

Once changes are made on the AutoCorrect window, click OK to save them. The changes you make take immediate effect.

AutoCorrect Options Buttons

Replace text as you type

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

cdc	Centers for Disease Control
cafe	café 🔺
caharcter	character
calcullated	calculated
calulated	calculated
can;t	can't
candidtae	candidate 👻
	Add Delete

- File name type in the file name
- Save as type choose the file type in which your file will be saved (MS Word
- 2010 .docx)
- Options > Save tab > Save document with AutoRecover information every (enter value)

Print a document:

- Printer choose which printer will be used for printing
- Page range-
 - > All
 - > Current page
 - Pages enter page numbers that you wish to print
- Copies number of printed copies
- Collated prints the entire file from beginning to the end and then a selected number of copies is done; Uncollated – prints the first page according to aselected number of copies, then the second one and so on until the last page.
- Orientation: Portrait (vertical paper) and Landscape (horizontal paper)

Print	
Copies: 1 0	
rinter ©	This is a preview of your document. This is what it will look like when you print
PC HP Color LaserJet 3500	
Printer Properties ettings	
Print All Pages	
Pages:	
Print One Sided Only print on one side of the page	
Collated 1,2,3 1,2,3 1,2,3	
Portrait Orientation 👻	
Letter	
Left: 1" Right: 1"	
1 Page Per Sheet 👻	
Page Setup	

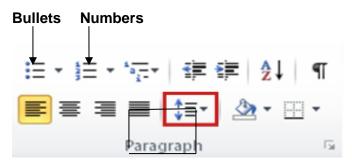
4.4 HOME TAB

The Home tab includes the following tools:



- Font Different letter types: Times New Roman, Verdana, Ariel, Calibri etc.
- Font Size enter value or choose any size from a drop-down menu
- Bold Ctrl + B
- Italic Ctrl + I
- Underline Ctrl + U
- Font effects
 - Strikethrough: some text ;
 - > Subscript: $H20 > H_2O$;
 - > Superscript: $5m2 > 5 m^2$;
 - To access additional commands, press the grey arrow in the lower right corner of the
 - ➢ Font tab (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + D).
 - The additional font effects are: Double, Strikethrough, Shadow, Outline, Emboss, Engrave, Small caps, All caps, Hidden.
 - To turn uppercase into lowercase or the other way around click the Change case icon.
- Text Effects
 - > Text Effects tool contains different text effects such as Shadow or Reflection.
 - > Text Highlight Color tool is used to emphasize the text with
 - > Shading tool is used to color the text background
 - Borders tool is used to set different types of lines (borders) around the selected text
 - > Font Color tool is used to select the color of letters

List tool include Bullets and Numbering

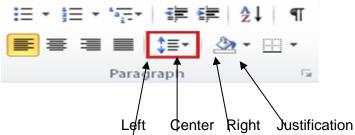


Method - 1

- Click the Bulleted List icon or Numbered List icon on the Home tab.
 Type the first entry and press Enter on your keyboard. This will create a new bullet or number on the next line. If you want to start a new line without adding another bullet or number, hold down the Shift key while pressing Enter. Continue to type entries and press the Bulleted List icon when you are finished typing to end the list.
- Use the Increase Indent and Decrease Indent icons on the Home tab to create lists of multiple levels.

Method - 2

- You can also type the text first, highlight the section, and press the Bulleted List or Numbered List icons to add bullets or numbers.
- To add a new item to the list press the Enter key
- To finish the list double press the Enter key
- Text alignment tool offers following alignments
 - Left (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl +L)
 - Center (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + E)
 - Right (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + R)
 - Justify (keyboard shortcut: Ctrl + J)



Line Spacing tool

Defines the distance between lines

- Select the paragraphs for which you want to change the line spacing.
- On the Home tab, in the Paragraph group, click Line Spacing.



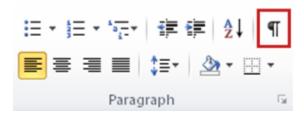
- Click the number of line spaces that you want.
- Click Line Spacing Options, and then select the options that you want under Spacing.

LINE SPACING OPTIONS

- **Single** This option accommodates the largest **font** in that line, plus a small amount of extra space. The amount of extra space varies depending on the font that is used.
- **1.5 lines** This option is one-and-one-half times that of single line spacing.
- **Double** This option is twice that of single line spacing.
- At least This option sets the minimum line spacing that is needed to fit the largest font or graphic on the line.
- **Exactly** This option sets fixed line spacing, expressed in points. For example, if the text is in a 10-point font, you can specify 12 points as the line spacing.
- **Multiple** This option sets line spacing that can be expressed in numbers greater than 1. For example, setting line spacing to 1.15 will increase the space by 15 percent, and setting line spacing to 3 increases the space by 300 percent (triple spacing).

• Show / Hide tool

- It is used to show or hide various formatting symbol.
- > On the Home tab, in the Paragraph group, click Show/Hide.



The **Show/Hide** button will not hide all formatting marks if you selected certain marks, such as paragraph marks or spaces, to be displayed at all times.

• Styles tool

- > To create a document in which every paragraph looks the same.
- > To format each element consistently.
- In Microsoft Word, a style is a collection of formatting instructions. You use Word styles to identify and format the structural elements in the document.
- Use the "Title" style for your title, "Body Text" style for body text, "Caption" style for the picture captions and "Heading 1" for the major headings.

How to use Word styles



- Apply a style select the text, press the left mouse button and choose a style or press the arrow in the lower right corner of the Styles menu > choose a style > click on Apply Style
- Change styles press the following arrow > choose Apply Style > select a style > choose Modify
- Create a new style: select the text with the desired formatting, press the following icon on the Styles menu > choose Save Selection as a New Quick Style

Search tool

It is used to find a certain text: click the Find command, enter the term you are looking for in the Find what text box and press Find Next

You can quickly search for every occurrence of a specific word or phrase.

On the Home tab, in the Editing group, click Find. Or press CTRL+F.

🐴 Find 🔻
ab Replace
🔓 Select 🔻
Editing

The Navigation pane opens.

In the **Search Document** box, type the text that you want to find.

Click a result to see it in your document, or browse through all the results by clicking the **Next Search Result** and **Previous Search Result** arrows.

Replace tool:

- Find What type in a word or phrase that you want to replace
- Replace With type in a word or a phrase which you want to replace the existing word or phrase with

Help on MS-Word

- To access MS Word Help, press the F1 key on the keyboard.
- Click the Microsoft Office Help button in the upper right or press the F1 key on your keyboard to open Help on your computer. The first time you use the Help feature in Microsoft Office programs, the online Help window appears in a default location and size on your screen. You can change the way the Help window is displayed. After that, when you open the Help window, the settings that you made are maintained.

4.5 INSERT TAB

The Insert tab includes the following tools:

- Page Break To remove a page break: turn on the Show / Hide tool, select Page Break and press the Delete key
- Tables tool- A **table** is a grid of cells arranged in **rows** and **columns**. Tables can be customized and are useful for various tasks such as presenting text information and numerical data.
- Insert a table within a document can be done in 2 ways:
- Position the cursor to a place in a document where you want to insert a table.
- Choose the Tables tool. Drag the cursor over the blanks until the desired column and row number is achieved, choose the Table command and select the table size

OR

- Choose the Table tool > press the Insert Table command > enter the number of rows and columns
- To navigate through a table use the TAB key, arrow keys on the keyboard or the
- left mouse button
- Format a table: Select the Table Tools > Borders> Shading

Insert a Table:

- Place your insertion point in the document where you want the table to appear.
- Select the **Insert** tab.
- Click the **Table** command.
- Hover your mouse over the diagram squares to select the number of **columns** and **rows** in the table.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

1	Insert	Pa	ge Layo	out	Refe	rences	М	ailings
			<mark>) </mark>	6				01 -+
Tabl	le Pic	ture	Clip Art	Shap	es Sm	artArt	Chart	Screenshot *
4x3	Table					ions		
							· 1 · · ·	· · · · · 2 ·
	<u>I</u> nsert	Table.						
	<u>D</u> raw	Table						
₹	Conve	rt Tex	t to Tab	le				
	E <u>x</u> cel S	Spread	lsheet					
	Quick	<u>T</u> able	s		►			
Inc	ortin	201		147 * *	h			

Inserting a new table

- Click your mouse, and the table appears in the document.
- Place the insertion point anywhere in the table to add text.
- Start populating the cells with desired data.

ile Home	Microsoft Apps	Prepare In:	sert Page Layout	References	Mailing	s Review \
Select * View Gridline Properties Table	Delete Insert Above	and another cert	Split Table	1.11 0142	• ш	
⊕ S.No	product		Price			
100	product Laptop		Price 1300			
S.No						
S.No	Laptop	er	1300			

Design &Layout- You can change the design by navigating to Design tab and select suitable Style for the table from group Table Styles.

_							Table	Tools	Document	2 - Microsoft V	Vord		
Prepare	Insert	Page Layout	References	Mailings	Review	View	Design	Layout					
													4 4 4
							Table	e Styles	Children Cantilandiana				-

Click on the style you want to apply it over the table.

7 Header Row Total Row	🛄 Last Column	
	style Options	Table Styles
F		
S.No	product	Price
1	Laptop	1300
1 2	Laptop LCD	1300 489
2	LCD	489

From Layout tab, you can customize the generic layout of the table, from Cell Size group, select the size of the cell, from *Merge*, you can use suitable option to merge cells, from *Rows & Columns*, you can insert new row or column in the table. From Table group you can insert gridlines, and view properties of the table.

File	Home Mi	crosoft Apps	Prepare	Insert	Page Lay	out	References	Mailing	s Review	View	Design	Layout
B	1	×							G Width:	Auto 💲	E Distri	bute Rows
Select	View Propertie Gridlines		Insert Insert	Insert	Insert M	erge S		AutoFit		0.42 :	🖽 Distri	bute Columns
	Table		Rows & Column	8	6	M	erge			Cell Size		1.64

To modify the height and Width of the rows in the Table

₽×4	🗓 Height:	0.8 cm	\$	∃
AutoFit	Width:	2.4 cm	¢	H Distribute Columns
		Cell Si	ze	G.

To calculate the total Price of the products, click the cell *Total* in the table, and click *Formula* from Layout tab.

Layout		
ibute Rows		$\frac{2}{2}$ f_x
ibute Columns	Text Cell	Sort Repeat Convert Formula Header Rows to Text
្រាភ្ន	Alignment	Data

Formula dialog will appear. Under *Formula*, =*SUM*(*ABOVE*) is automatically inserted, this can evaluate sum of all the above values. From *Number Format* drop down list select one which includes dollar sign, click *OK* to continue.

Formula:	
=SUM(ABOVE)	
Number format:	
\$#,##0.00;(\$#,##0.0	0)
Paste function:	Paste bookmark:
	-
	OK Cancel

It will show sum of values.

Select *	Delete Insert	Merge Cell Alignment	t
Properties Table	Above Insert Right	t + Size+ +	
ĺ.			
S.No	product	Price	14
8	product Laptop	Price 1300	
S.No			
S.No	Laptop	1300	2

Insert an additional row or a column- Place the insertion point in the cell where you want to insert a row or column, press the right mouse button and on the Quick menu select the Insert > Row Above or the Insert > Row Below command or Insert > Column Left or Insert > Column

Add a Row Above an Existing Row:

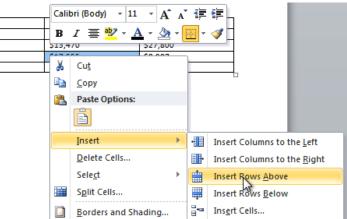
The insertion point in a row **below** the location to add a row.

Salesperson	Print	TV	Web	
Jim M.	\$10,252	\$25,560	\$13,745	
Beth W.	\$5,550	\$13,470	\$27,800	
Luiz D.	\$8,547	617,555	\$8,907	
Alice S.	\$13,578	\$6,789	\$10,239	

Insertion point

Placing the insertion point

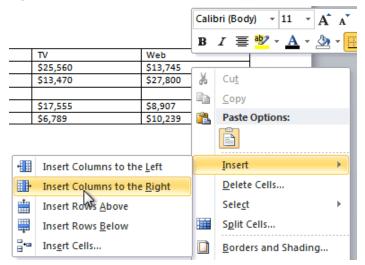
- Right-click the mouse. A menu appears.
- Select Insert -> Insert Rows Above.



Adding a row- You can also add rows below the insertion point. Follow the same steps, but select Insert Rows Below from the menu.

Add a Column:

- Place the **insertion point** in a **column adjacent** to the location you wish the new column to appear.
- Right-click the mouse. A menu will appear.



Adding a column

Select Insert → Insert Columns to the Left or Insert Columns to the Right. A new column appears.

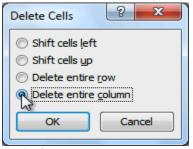
Delete a Row or Column:

- Delete rows and columns:
- Select row(s) or column(s) that you wish to delete, press the right mouse button (quick menu appears) > choose: Delete Columns or Delete Row
- Select the row or column.
- Right-click your mouse. A menu will appear.
- Select Delete Cells.



Selecting Delete Cells

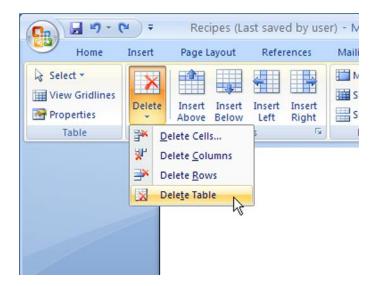
Select Delete entire row or Delete entire column and click OK.



Deleting a column

Delete a table

- Click the mouse inside the table.
- The Table Tools appear.
- Layout tab is displayed
- Choose Delete—Table.
- This command is located in the Rows & Columns group on the Layout tab.



Pictures tool

- Select a picture by clicking on it with a left mouse button. Control points (in the shape of small squares) will appear on the object's borders.
- Move images to an arbitrary location: select picture by right-clicking it > choose
- Format Picture > Layout > Wrap > choose an offered style
- Set an object size:
 - Manually: Select an object, move one of the control points by using the drag and drop method
 - Automatically: Type in the exact values: right-click the object > choose Format Picture > the Size tab > enter values for height and width

Insert symbol € £ © ∞ □ ≠ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ etc.

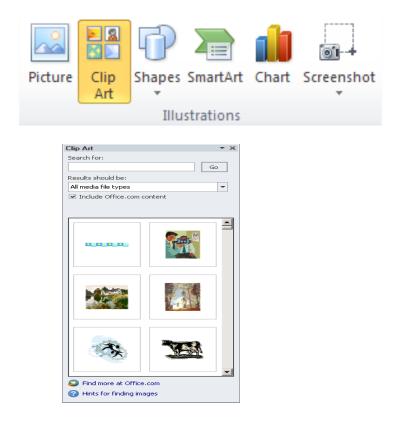




Dr. MCR HRDIAP

Insert Picture							<u>?</u> ×
Look in:	🛅 Anna =D			•	💮 - 🔰	X 🞽	•
My Recent Documents Desktop Documents My Computer My Network Places	2009-2010 slideshow 2010-2011 slideshow desktop flv icons KGRegistration laptop_files PC backup swf 100_0457 100_0458 100_0463 100_0463 100_0465 faq guide HLSdesktop hewcenlogo copy	onlineacademy pabutton payschools proticesbutton presources igning thing Technology Guys!					
	File name: Files of type: All Picture:	;			• •		
Tools	,				Ingert 🔹	Cano	:el

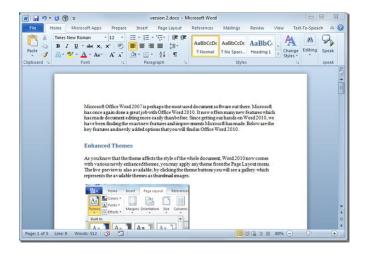
Insert Clip art



Hyperlink

Hyperlinks provide a simple way of referring data or element that is to be followed. Using the hyperlinks in Word 2010, you can easily refer your document's audience to specific heading, file, page, website link etc.. Unlike other word processors, MS Word provides users with a wide range of features to easily create and manage hyperlinks. It supports almost all types of hyperlinks that users frequently use in the document. Apart from creating hyperlinks to bookmarks, you can easily choose the headings within the document that you want to link to; if shows a list of headings present in your document to let you select to create the hyperlink for. In what follows, we will explain how you can create and manage hyperlinks in Word 2010.

To get started, open a Word 2010 document in which we want to create hyperlinks.



Right-click a desired word or portion of the document and select Hyperlink.

	U @ -			ersion 2.docx - Mic
File H Paste Clipboard Is	B I ∐ - abe ×, × ³	A A	Insert	Page Layout
		Times N 1B: Z	u = *	
	Microsoft Of has once aga has made do have been fu key features		opy aste Options:	ps the most used Office Word 201 ily thanbefore. S ares and improve s that you will fin
	Enhanced As you know with various The live prev represents th		ont aragraph ullets P umbering P yles P	he style of the who you may apply clicking the the umbnail ima ges.
			yperlink oo <u>k</u> Up) monyms) an <u>s</u> late	iut References

Link To Existing File or Web Page

It will bring up *Insert Hyperlink* dialog, from the left sidebar select *Existing File or Web Page*, from right sidebar select the file for which to want to create a hyperlink, from *Text to display* enter text you want to display instead of a file path. Under Address, for creating hyperlink for a web page, enter webpage address. Click *OK* to continue.

Link to:	Text to displ	ay: Microsoft Office		ScreenTig
xisting File or	Look in:	Desktop		
Web Page	Current Folder	Internet Explorer Youtube Downloader HD 1.txt	^	Bookmark Target Frame.
Place in This Document	Browsed Pages	Access Forms & Reports.accdb AddictiveTips.docx Al_Macrol.xitm Book1.xisx	ш	
Create <u>N</u> ew Document	Regent Files	combined.docx combined.docx	Ŧ	
A	Address:	Book1.xlsx	-	

You will see a hyperlink is created, hold Ctrl and click the link to open it.

	X 🔒	e) + (u +			Book	1.xlsx [Sh	ared] - Micr	rosoft
Microsoft Office has once again do	File	Home	Insert	Page Lay	out For	mulas	Data Rev	view
has made docum have been finding key features and		K Cali a - B ✓ ⊞	I <u>U</u> ·	A A A	1000	■ = = - ≫, -	General \$ - %	•
Enhanced Th	Clipboard	i is	Font	154	Alignme	ent 🙃	Number	19
As you know that		F9	• (÷	fx			
with various new		A	В	С	D	E	F	
The live previewi	1							
represents the ava	2							
Phone Home	3							
(mark)	4							
Aa Colors A Fonts	5							
Ruit-In	6							-

Link within Document

Move to *Insert Hyperlink* dialog and from the left sidebar select *Place in This Document*, from main dialog you can select Headings, Bookmarks to create hyperlink with, from *Text to display* enter text you want to display. Click *OK* to continue.

Link to:	Text to display: Check Themes	ScreenTig
	Select a plage in this document:	
xisting File or Web Page	Top of the Document Headings Enhanced Themes	
Place in This Document	 Protected Mode Customizable Quick Access Tool Bar Paste Preview 	Target Frame
Create <u>N</u> ew Document	Navigation Pane Customizable Ribbon Button Improved Collaborations Bookmarks	
Ð		

As we have linked heading in the document, thus upon click, it will lead us to specified heading.

Cambria (Headings) × 14 Paste B I U × abs X, X ²	version 2.docx - N Prepare Insert Page Layout ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓	References Mailin AaBbCcDc AaBb T Normal T No Sp	Word 2010's Quick Access Toolbar displays all the commonly used option top left side comer of the application window, near the office button. By following three options, Save, Undo and Redo, but is customizable and y options to it <u>Check Themes</u> .
has once again has made doct have been find key features at Enhanced 7 As you known with various n The live previous represents the represent the represent the	a done a great job with Office Word 24 ument editing more easily than before ting the exact new features and impro- ndnewly added options that you will f Themes that the theme affects the style of the v ewly enhanced themes, you may apple wis also available; by clicking the that available themes as thumbnail images me Inset Page Layout Reference loss the available option of the state of the state of the state of the state option of the state of the state of the state of the state option of the state of the state of the state of the state option of the state of the state of the state of the state option of the state of the state of the state of the state option of the state of the state of the state of the state option of the state of the state of the state of the state option of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the st	010. It now offers many Since getting our hand wements Microsoft has r find in Office Word 201 whole document, Word y any theme from the Pa teme buttons you will se s.	Image: Current of the second secon

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

LINK to Create New Document

Move to Insert Hyperlink dialog, from left sidebar select Create New Document, and from the main dialog enter the name of the document, under *When to edit* select an option and click *OK*.

Link to:	Text to display: New Document	ScreenTip
	Name of new <u>d</u> ocument:	
xisting File or Web Page	Word Test 1	
web Page	Full path:	
Place in This Document	C:\Users\Usman\Desktop\	Change Target Frame
Create <u>N</u> ew Document	When to edit: O Edit the new document later (a) Edit the new document now	

This type of link will open a new document with name specified.

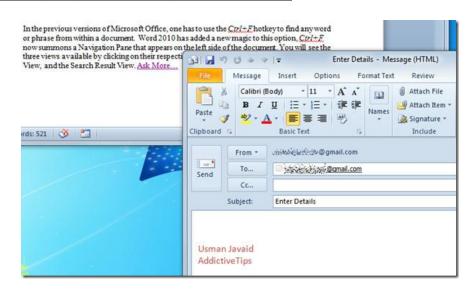
Protected Mode		
Protected Mode is one of the enhanced security features v viruses. By default it opens the documents which are dow that editing is disabled, you will need to manually enable	W J - O File Word Test 1.docx - Microsoft Wor File Home Microso Prepar Insert Page L Referer Mailin	
preview of the document, if they find it legit and from the editing, otherwise delete it. Check it in <u>New Document</u>	Calibri (Body) * 11 * S A B I U * abe x, x'	#
Protected View This file originated from an Internet location	Paste Paste Clipboard rs Pont rs Paragraph Style:	Editing
We have coveredit in further details here.		
Vords: 521 🕉 🞦		
	1	

Link to Email Address

For linking content with an email address, open Insert Hyperlink dialog, from left sidebar select E-mail Address, and from main window enter the recipient email address, under Subject write down the subject of the email message. Click *OK* to continue.

Link to:	Text to display: Ask More		ScreenTip
0	E-mail address:		
visting File or Web Page	mailto::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::		
webrage	Subject:		
a	Enter Details		
Place in This	Recently used e-mail addresses:		
Document	subject=Checked	*	
	subject=Checked r= 20% subject=Excel%20		
1			
Create New			
Document			
		T	

This Link will open up Outlook compose mail window.



You can also check out previously reviewed guides on How to change default font settings in Word 2010&Fill font with Gradient Color Pattern in Word 2010.

Header & Footer section has three different buttons: Header, Footer, and Page Number.

- To edit a header or a footer: double-click the left mouse button on a header/footer area or press the right mouse button on a header/ footer area and choose the Edit command
- To exit a header/footer field: double-click the left mouse button on the Word desktop
- Insert a field: Quick Parts > Field... Field types: page number, date, time, author etc.
- Page Number choose position: Top of page, Bottom of page
- Alignment: centre, left or right position of the page

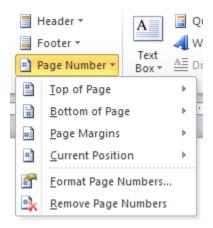
Adding Header:

E F	leader *	A Quick Parts * 🍃	Signature Line \star π	Equat
Bui	lt-In			Þ
Blar	nk			
	[Type text]			=
Blar	nk (Three Colum	ans)		
	[Type text]	[Type text]	[Type text]	
Alph	abet			
		[Type the document title]		
Ann	ual			
		[Type the docume	ent title] [Year]	
6	More Headers	s from Office.com		F
	<u>E</u> dit Header			
3	Remove Head	er		
	Save Selection	n to Header Gallery		

Adding Footer

Header •			Signature Line ▼ Signature Line ▼ Date & Time	
Built-In				
Blank				20
[Type text]				
Blank (Three Colur	nns)			
1				
[Type text]		[Type text]	[Type text]	
L				
Alphabet				
[Type text]			Page 1	
Annual				
1				
1				
1				
1 More Footers	from Office.	com		
`	from Office.	com		•
More Footers		com		•

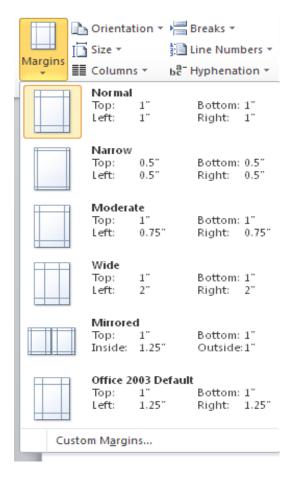
Adding Page Number:



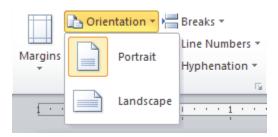
4.6 PAGE LAYOUT TAB

The tools on the Page Layout tab are:

Margins: choose one of the pre-determent margins in regard to height and width



Orientation: Portrait and Landscape



	👌 Orient	ation 🔻 📇 Breaks 👻	Į.
	I 🔄 Size 🔻	📳 Line Numbers 🔻	1
Margins		Letter 8 ½ x 11 in 8.5" x 11"	
<u>.</u>		Legal 8 ½ x 14 in 8.5" x 14"	
		Executive 7 ¼ x 10 ½ in 7.25" x 10.5"	
		A4 210 x 297 mm 8.27" x 11.69"	_
		A5 148 x 210 mm 5.83" x 8.27"	
		B5 182 x 257 mm 7.17" x 10.12"	
		Envelope 9 3.88" x 8.87"	
		Envelope 10 4.12" x 9.5"	
		Envelope DL 110 x 220 mm 4.33" x 8.66"	
		Envelope C5 162 x 229 mm 6.38" x 9.02"	•
	Mo	re P <u>a</u> per Sizes	

Size tools allows you to set the paper size

Page borders- Different types and sizes of lines that you can apply as page borders.

Page Borders allows you to add borders around your document. There are many choices that can be made for creating borders, such as using images, the line style, colors, the setting of it, the width, and more.



Borders and Shadi	ng		<u>? x</u>
Borders Page Bo	rder Shading		
Setting:	Style:	Preview	-
<u>N</u> one		buttons to apply borders	
Box			
Shadow	_		
3- <u>D</u>	<u>C</u> olor: Automatic ▼		
Custom	Width:		
	1/2 pt 📃 🔻	Apply to:	
	Art:	Whole document	
	(none)	Options	
Horizontal Line		OK Car	icel

Adding Columns to Word Document

In many cases to write the contents of documents in the column format. Select the paragraphs and hit the *Columns* option. Then choose the number of columns to create.

Page Layout	References Mailings
Orientation Size	Columns Columns Columns
Page	S One
	Two
	Thre
	Left
	Righ
	More <u>Co</u> umns

Below is a Document into two columns.

All authentication parameters are defined in radius-protile. You can set attributes such as service subtenticated (checked) or authenticated (checked) or au

The Page Background section has three buttons: Watermark, Page Color, and Page Borders.

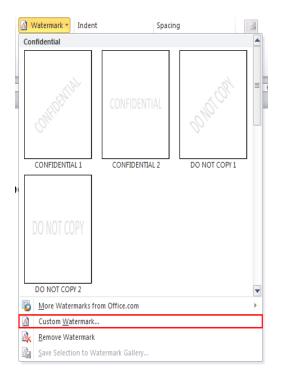
Watermark Tool

- Documents can be watermarked either by applying a background image or text. To apply Click on Watermark, it shows a window with different watermark templates as: Confidential, Do Not Copy, Draft, Sample, Urgent etc.....Click watermark of your choice, it quickly embeds on the document
- You can also create your personal watermark. Click on **Custom Watermark** button. It opens a window where you can select **Picture Watermark**, browse any image from your desktop to use as a watermark or select the option **Text Watermark**. Input text of your choice and set font, language, size color etc& click Apply button.

You can also remove your applied Watermark just by clicking on Page Layout > Watermark

Remove Watermark button.

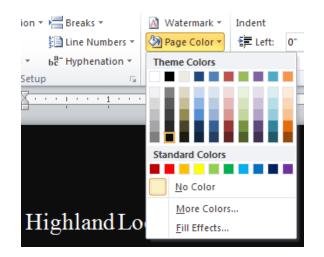
Dr. MCR HRDIAP



To remove the water mark -

Printed Water	mark	<u>?</u> ×
 No waterma Picture wate 		
Select Pict	ure,	
Scale:	Auto 💌 🔽 Washout	
C Text watern	nark	
Language:	English (U.S.)	v
Text:	ASAP	7
Font:	Calibri	7
Size:	Auto	
Color:	Automatic 🔽 🔽 Semitransparent	
Layout:	🖲 Diagonal 🛛 C Horizontal	
	Apply OK Can	el

Page Color allows you to change the color of document's background. This includes solid colors and fill effects (gradients, textures, patterns, and pictures).



• **Indent-** Indentation determines the distance of the paragraph from either the left or the right margin. Within the margins, you can increase or decrease the indentation of a paragraph or group of paragraphs. You can also create a negative indent (also known as an outdent), which pulls the paragraph out toward the left margin. You can also create a hanging indent, in which the first line of the paragraph is not indented, but subsequent lines are.

Click in front of the line that you want to indent.

On the Page Layout tab, click the Paragraph Dialog Box Launcher, and then click the Indents and Spacing tab.

Indent			Spacing		
≹ ≣ Left	0"	÷	‡≣ Before	0 pt	\$
≣≝ Right	0"	÷	¥≣ After	10 pt	\$
Paragraph					

In the **Special** list under **Indentation**, click **First line**, and then in the **By** box, set the amount of space that you want the first line to be indented

4.7 MAILINGS TAB

A Circular letter is a letter of the same content sent to multiple recipients; personal data is entered from an address book into fields thus personalizing the letters;

Create a circular letter: Start Mail Merge > start Step by Step Mail Merge Wizard

- Select a document type for your mail merge
- Letter a text that differs only by inserted fields
- E-mail message the same as the letter
- Envelopes print of names and addresses of recipients
- Labels
- Directory the whole document presents a list of catalogues or a list of addresses

Select a starting document

- Use current document a document that is in use
- Start from a template select a template
- Use an existing document then navigate to and open an existing document

Select Recipient

- Use an existing list uses names and addresses from a file or a database
- Select from Outlook contacts
- Click Type a new list then create a new contact list

Arrange your directory – to add recipient information click on a location in the document and choose one of the items: Address block, Greetings etc.

Preview your directory – you can also edit recipients list Complete the merge

4.8 REVIEW TAB

The Review tab is used for following actions:

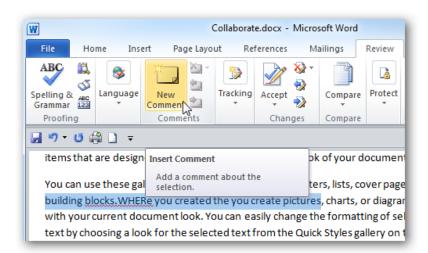
- Words that are misspelled will be underlined in red, wavy lines
 Settings: Language > Set Proofing Language
- The Spelling and Grammar tool opens a dialog box with the following options:
 - > Ignore once, Ignore all, Change, Change all
 - If a word is not in the dictionary you can add it: select the desired word, right-click it and choose Add to dictionary

Comments

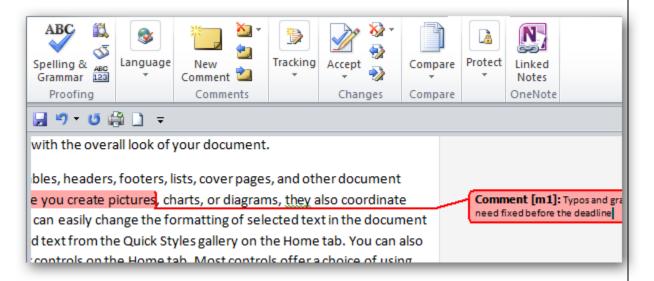
If you're sharing or collaborating on a Word document, you might want an easy way to add comments to parts of text. Here we look at how to add comments to documents in Word 2010.

Insert Comment

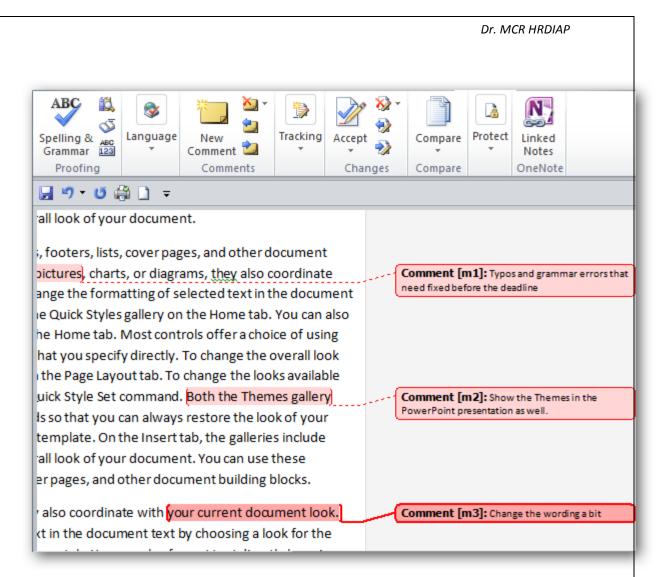
To insert a comment in a document, highlight the area of text where you want to comment on. Click the Review tab on the Ribbon then click New Comment.



That opens up a balloon pointing to the highlighted text you can leave your comment in.



You can leave as many comments as needed in the document, in this example we created three comments in different areas. Now you or anyone you're sharing the document with will be able to read the comments.



4.9 VIEW TAB

The following tools are located on the View tab:

- Print Layout view shows how the text and various objects on a printed page are o distributed; the most commonly used view.
- Full Screen Reading view is adjusted for reading documents
- Web Layout view is used for creating a web site
- Outline view displays a document structure and facilitates text editing: moving,
- copying, editing text and changing the heading level.
- Draft view displays a document as a draft, certain elements such as headers are not

 Displayed
- Zoom view lets you choose or enter various values
- Page Width
 - Text Width
 - Whole Page
 - Two Page

Using Tabs

• By pressing the TAB key on the keyboard, the insertion point is moved by 1.25 cm to the right

- By using tabs, you can precisely define where you want to move the insertion Tabs are:
 - ➢ left tab
 - > center tab
 - ➢ right tab
 - decimal tab
- Set tabs:
 - > The ruler must be visible
 - > The icon, found on the left of the ruler, enables us to select a tab type
 - > Click on the ruler using the left mouse button in order to insert a tab
 - Use the TAB key to move from one to another tab
 - Remove a tab by pressing and holding down the left mouse button over a tab and drag it away from the ruler.
 - To display the Tabs dialog box, double-click any tab stop on the ruler, or do the following:
 - > On the Page Layout tab, click the Paragraph Dialog Box Launcher.

Indent			Spacing		
≥ Left	0"	\$	‡≣ Before	0 pt	\$
∎ - Right	0-	\$	*≣ After	10 pt	\$
		Paragr	aph		5

In the **Paragraph** dialog box, click **Tabs**.

Using the Horizontal Ruler to Set Tab Stops

- By default, there are no tab stops on the ruler when you open a new blank document.
- The final two options on the tab selector are actually for indents. You can click these and then click the ruler to position the indents, rather than sliding the indent markers along the ruler. Click First Line Indent , and then click the upper half of the horizontal ruler where you want the first line of a paragraph to begin. Click Hanging Indent , and then click the lower half of the horizontal ruler where you want the second and all following lines of a paragraph to begin.
- When you set a bar tab stop, a vertical bar line appears where you set the tab stop (you don't need to press the TAB key). A bar tab is similar to strikethrough formatting, but it runs vertically through your paragraph at the location of the bar tab stop. Like other types of tabs, you can set a bar tab stop before or after you type the text of your paragraph.
- You can remove a tab stop by dragging it (up or down) off the ruler. When you release the mouse button, the tab stop disappears.
- You can also drag existing tab stops left or right along the ruler to a different position.
- When multiple paragraphs are selected, only the tabs from the first paragraph show on the ruler.

Remove Formatting from the Document

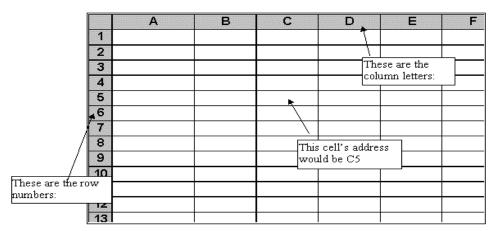
In *Home* menu, *Styles* section, click the drop down option and choose the *Clear Formatting* option.

AaBb	CcL	AaBbCcL	Aai	AaBbCc	AaBbCcL	AaBbCcL	
1 Cap	tion	Emphasis	1 Heading 1	1 Heading 2	1 Heading 3	1 Heading 4	
AaBb	CcL	AaBbCc	AaBbCc.	AaBbCcDd	AaBb(AaBbCcI	
1 Head	ing 5	1 Heading 6	1 Heading 7	1 Heading 8	1 Heading 9	1 Normal	
AaB	oCc	AaBb	AaBbCcI	AaBbCcL	AaBbCcL	AaBbCcl	
1 Sub	title	1 Title	¶ No Spaci	Subtle Em	Intense E	Strong	
AaBb	CcL	AaBbCcl	AABBCC]	AABBCC	AABBCC	AaBbCcI	
Out	te	Intense Q	Subtle Ref	Intense R	Book Title	1 List Para	

MICROSOFT EXCEL 2010

5.1 Spread sheets

A spread sheet is a grid of boxes, or cells, set up in rows and columns. Every cell has a unique address, corresponding to its row and column location. The cell in the first column and first row is A1. The cell in the third column and fifth row would be C5. The computer can find its way around the spread sheet by using those addresses, and perform functions on the numbers entered in those cells.



The grid can be used to calculate by using formulas and functions. Columns or rows can be sorted alphabetically or numerically. That makes a spread sheet a powerful tool.

Entering data

To enter the data click on the cell in which it is required and then do the entry.

	Α	В	С	D	E	F
1						
2						
	Administra					
4	Board of H	ealth				
5	Emergency	y Managem	ent			
6	Police					
7	Fire					
8	Sanitation					
9						

The cell is not large enough to fit the words. But the columns can be made larger by moving the mouse to the line between columns.

Click and hold on the line and drag it out to make it larger:

	A	В	С	D	E	F
1						
2						
	Administration					
	Board of Health					
5	Emergency Management					
6	Police					
7	Fire					
8	Sanitation					
9						

5.2 Introduction to MS-Excel 2010

Microsoft Excel is an electronic spread sheet that can be used to organize data rows and columns, to perform mathematical calculations quickly.Microsoft Excel 2010

Open by following the instructions given below Go to Start --> All Programs --> Microsoft Office --> Excel

INTERFACE ELEMENTS

- Buttons window manipulation minimize, maximize, close window
- Title Bar contains documents name, extension (.xlsx) and the program name
- Tabs
 - ≻ File
 - ➤ Home
 - > Insert
 - Page layout
 - Formulas
 - Data
 - > Review
 - > View
- Toolbar

Some tools have hidden tools. If they do have hidden tools, they have an arrow in their lower right corner which, when clicked, displays additional option tools that cannot be applied on selected object are greyed out tools that have dots, if pressed, lead to another sequence of commands.

- Toolbars with tabs are called Ribbon
- Selected cells before we can enter text, number or other data we must first select cell or cells. Click the mouse on the cell to select it.
- Column titles (letters)
- Row titles (numbers)

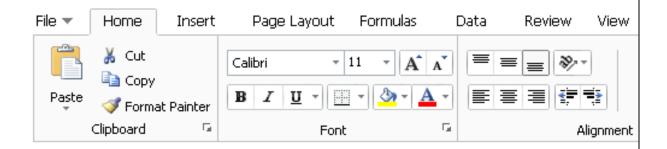
- Sheets Sheets are named as Sheet1, Sheet2, Sheet 3 by default.
- Bars for horizontal and vertical navigation (sliders)
- Status bar displays information about some special functions of Microsoft Excel
- Bar for formulas
- Spread sheet: File in MS Excel, consisting of worksheets (3 by default)
- Worksheet: consists of a large number of columns and rows that form a table
 - > Cell the basic element in Excel, data entry (text, number, formula)
 - > Cell address: the column letter and row number, e.g. A1, C7, F25
 - > Selecting cells press left mouse button on the cell in order to select it

The Title Bar



On the Title bar, Microsoft Excel displays the name of the workbook, which is currently in use.

The Ribbon



In Microsoft Excel 2010, we use the Ribbon to issue commands.

- The Ribbon is located near the top of the Excel window.
- At the top of the Ribbon are several tabs;
- Clicking a tab displays several related command groups.
- Within each group are related command buttons.
- Buttons are clicked to issue commands or to access menus and dialog boxes.

- A dialog box launcher is found in the bottom-right corner of a group.
- Click the dialog box launcher, a dialog box makes additional commands available.

Ribbon Tab Name	Command Groups	Dialog Box Shortcut
Home	Clipboard, Font, Alignment, Styles, Cells, and Editing	Ctrl+Shift+F (Font)
Insert	Tables, Illustrations, Charts, Sparklines, Filter, Links, Text, and Symbols	*
Page Layout	Themes, Page Setup, Scale to Fit, Sheet Options, and Arrange	*
Formulas	Function Library, Defined Names, Formula Editing, and Calculation	*
Data	Get External Data, Connections, Sort and Filter, Data Tools, and Outline	*
Review	Proofing, Language, Comments, and Changes	*
View	Workbook Views, Show, Zoom, Window, and Macros	*

Excel 2010 Ribbon Tabs

The Formula Bar

C1 ▼ (* × √ fx | 90

If the Formula bar is turned on, then in the Name box (located on left side) it displays the cell address of the cell you are in. Cell entries which can be a values or formulas are displayed on the right side of the Formula bar.

The Status Bar

The Status bar appears at the bottom of the Excel 2010 window and provides quick information such as the count, sum, average, minimum, and maximum value of selected numbers. We can change what displays on the Status bar by right-clicking on the Status bar and selecting the options we want from the Customize Status Bar menu. We just need to click a menu item to select it and click it again to deselect it. A check mark appearing next to an item means the item is selected.

	Dr. MCR HRDIAP
Ready Ready	
	<u>↑</u>
Zoom Slider	
The Worksheet	
Microsoft Excel 2010 consists of worksheets (Default Names are "Sheet1", "She "Sheet3"). Each worksheet contains columns and rows. The columns are lettere then continuing with AA, AB, AC to AZ and then continuing with AAA, AAB and s (total columns are 16384); the rows are numbered 1 to 1,048,576. The combination of a column coordinate and a row coordinate defines a cell add	d A to Z and so on up to XFD
example, the cell located in the upper-left corner of the worksheet is cell A1, me row 1. Cell C7 is located under column C on row 7. We enter our data into the co worksheet.	aning column A,
Paste A Calibri -11 $-$	File Tab Ribbon nula Bar

Data Entry in Excel

Enter Data in a Cell.

- a. Select the cell in which you want to enter the data.
- b. Type some data and press Enter.
- Enter data select the cell and type in data
- Add content to cell double-click with left mouse button on the cell and enter any
- extra data
- Change existing content select the cell and change data
- For marking decimal place use dot, not comma
- Numbers align on the right side and the text aligns on the left side of the cell
- If entered content exceeds cell width, it will be displayed over adjacent cells, provided that adjacent cells have no data entered.
- To move to another cell: you can use TAB key, keys with arrow on the keyboard, or left mouse button
- Select a range of cells:
- Select the first cell in the range, press and hold left mouse button, move the mouse to the last cell and release left button.

Or

- Select the first cell in the range, press and hold the Shift key, select the last cell in range and release the Shift key
- Select a row or column: press the mouse button on the row number or column letter
- Select several adjacent rows: press the left mouse button on the row number, press and hold left mouse button, move the mouse to the last row and release the left button (or use Shift key, while Shift key is pressed select first then last row then release the Shift key)
- Select several nonadjacent cells, rows and columns: press left mouse button on the row number in order to select it, press and hold Ctrl key, select other rows and then release Ctrl key

Rename a worksheet

• While we are positioned in the worksheet we want to rename: press Format button on the Home ribbon, choose Rename Sheet option, enter new name and press Enter key,

Or

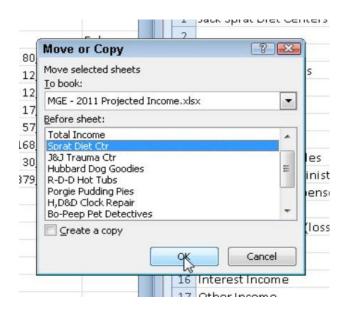
• Press the right mouse button on the tab of the worksheet and from quick menu choose Rename option

N. N.	- All

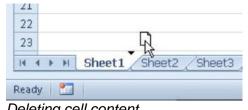
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			
22			
23			
24			
25			

Copying and moving worksheets

- Copying and moving worksheets within or between spreadsheets (spreadsheets must be open):
 - Press right mouse button on the worksheets sheet tab and choose Move or Copy sheet option
 - Within the dialog box that appears, choose the workbook you want to move the sheet to, and before which sheet that sheet will be placed
- If you want to copy sheet, mark the checkbox next to Create a Copy option, otherwise the worksheet will be moved



Note: Move or copy sheets between open workbooks by dragging their sheet tabs from one workbook window to another (hold down the Ctrl key as you drag a sheet tab to create a copy). Use the Arrange All command on the View tab to display all workbooks onscreen.



Deleting cell content

Delete Data from a Cell

a. Select the cell of which you want to delete the data.

b. Press Delete.

Select one or more cells (with the Shift key if they are adjacent, or with the Ctrl key if they are not), and press the Delete key or Delete button on the Home ribbon.

Using Quick Access Toolbar

You will find the Quick Access Toolbar in the top-left side of the window. To begin, click the Customize button as shown in the screenshot below.

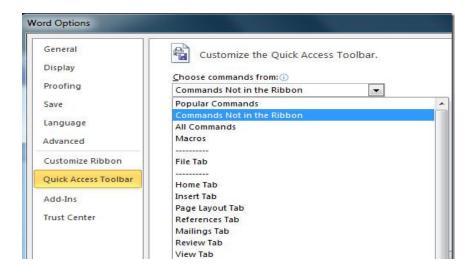
- Always first select the cells and then the desired tool. Arrow in lower right corner will provide you with additional options
- Undo change and redo change- Undo Redo
- Pressing the arrow next to the tool opens a drop-down list of all the changes that we have made.

🛯 🔜 🖉 🕫 🖻 👘 🐨 🖪	Document1 - Micro
File Home 👖 Insert Page Layout	F Customize Quick Access Toolbar
Caliby (Body) - 11	V New
	A Open
Dacte	A Save
Clipboard G Font	🕞 🚺 E-mail
	Quick Print
Quick Access Icons	V Print Preview
	Spelling & Grammar
Customize button	Vndo
	✓ Redo
	V Draw Table
	Open Recent File
	More Commands
	Show Below the Ribbon

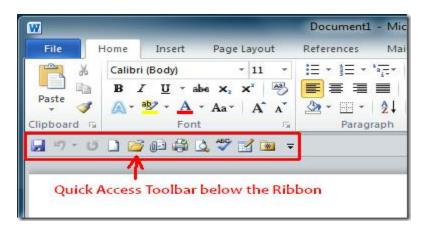
By default, there are only three quick access icons enabled, save, undo, and redo. You can enable other commands from the Customize Quick Access Toolbar menu. Once enabled, you will find their icons in the Quick Access Toolbar.

Technically, any command can be added to the Quick Access Toolbar. Click the More Commands option and a new window will open from where you can browse Commands.

To add a command, select it and hit the Add button. You can either customize the Quick Access Toolbar for all documents or for any specific document.



To move it below the Ribbon, click Show Below the Ribbon option in the context menu which is just under the More Commands option.

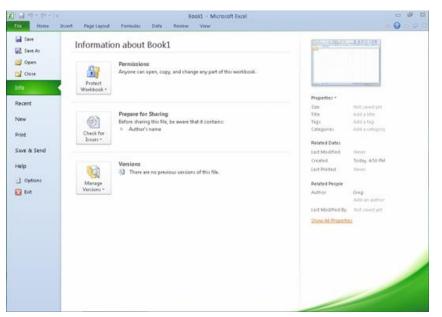


5.3 File Tab

Near the top-left corner of the Excel 2010 window, you find the green File <u>tab</u>, which provides access to Backstage view..

The new Backstage view contains all the document- and file-related commands, including Info, Save, Save As, Open, Close, Recent, New, Print, and Save & Send.

Additionally, there's a Help option, an Options item that enables you to change many of Excel's default settings, and an Exit option to quit the program.



Open Backstage view to access file-related commands and modify program options.

Backstage view, the Info option displays statistics about the Excel <u>workbook</u> file opened and active in the program.

This Info panel is divided into two panes:

- The pane on the left contains large buttons that enable you to modify the workbook's permissions, distribution, and versions.
- The pane on the right contains a thumbnail of the workbook followed by fields that detail the workbook's Document Properties, some of which you can change (such as Title, Tags, Categories, and Author), .
- Above the Info option, you find the commands (Save, Save As, Open, and Close)
- Near the bottom, the File tab contains a Help option that, when clicked, displays a Support panel.
 - This panel contains options for getting help on using Excel, customizing its default settings, and checking for Excel 2010 program updates. Below Help, you find options that you can select to change the program's settings, along with an Exit option that you can select when you're ready to close the program.

Recent option on the File tab displays Excel workbook worked on of late.

- To close the Backstage view and return to the normal <u>worksheet</u> view, you can click the File tab again (or any <u>Ribbon</u> tab) or simply press the Escape key.
- Save command (keyboard shortcut Ctrl + S)
- Save in choose location where file will saved
- File name type in file name
- Save as type –choose file type format in which file will be saved
- Creating new workbook: press File choose New option, then Blank workbook, and then press Create button (or use keyboard shortcut Ctrl + N)
- Creating new file can be facilitated by using a template extension .xltx
- Creating new spreadsheet using template: after choosing New option, select Sample Templates option
- Open an existing file to open several files at once, use the Ctrl key or the Shift key to select

Print:

- Printer choose printer
- Copies number of copies to be printed
 - > Range
 - Print active sheets

- Print entire workbook
- Print selection
- Orientation
 - o Portrait vertical paper
 - o Landscape-horizontal paper
 - Margins: Normal Narrow Wide
- Scaling:
 - No scaling
 - Fit sheet to one page
 - Fit all columns to one page
 - Fit all rows to one page
 - Collated will print the entire worksheet from start to finish, then will make copies according to selected number of copies;
 - Uncollated will print the first page according to selected number of copies, then second page, etc.
- Page setup
 - o Page on the drop-down menu choose paper size
 - Margins –manually set the margins
 - Header / Footer within fields enter header / footer information.
 - Sheets select cell range that will automatically print and rows that will repeat on each page of the worksheet

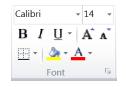
5.4 Home tab

The Excel 2010 Home Tab has the following Groups: Clipboard, Font, Alignment, Number, Styles, Cells, and Editing.

File	Home Insert Page	e Layout Formulas [View PDF		∧ (?) — 🗗 X
	Calibri 🛛 🕇 14	• = <mark>_ </mark>	General 👻	Conditional Formatting *	∎ •■Insert ▼	Σ · 🛓
Paste	BIU·A	A` ≣ ≣ ≣ ·	<u></u> -%,			
→ 💜	<u> </u>	€E 5E 🕅 ×	0.€ 0.€ 00. 00.	📑 Cell Styles 🔻	Format 🔻	✓ Sort & Find & Filter ▼ Select ▼
Clipboard 🕞	Font	🖾 Alignment 🖾	Number 🕞	Styles	Cells	Editing

Font Group

It has various options for formatting the font on the data.



- > Font: (drop-down menu) Times New Roman, Verdana, Ariel, Calibri etc.
- Font Size: (drop-down menu)
- Text formatting
 - Bold

Ctrl + B

- Italic
 - Ctrl + I
- Underline
 - Ctrl + U keyboard shortcuts
- Font Color choose Font color (drop-down menu)

Alignment: -



- Horizontal alignment: top, middle or the bottom of the cell
- Vertical alignment -Align Left, Center, Align Right, Justify
- > Merge and center tool to merge selected cell range and center the content
- Orientation –Tool for setting the direction of the content in cell
- Wrap Text Warps text within cells width in order to make it visible

Number Format

- > Set number format in which numbers will be displayed
- Increase / decrease number of decimal places



Styles

🔣 Conditional Formatting 👻
Format as Table 🔻
🖳 Cell Styles 🔻
Styles

Conditional Formatting – Tool for setting the condition, and setting the format if a cell meets the condition



- > Insert tool for inserting cells, columns, rows, worksheets
- Delete tool for deleting cell content and/or cell formatting; deleting columns, rows, worksheets
- Format tool for formatting selected cells, columns, rows, worksheets
- Protect sheet enter password and protect whole or a part of a sheet (cell range)
- Rename Sheet enter name and press the Enter key
- Lock cell functional only if we protect the worksheet first

Editing Group



5.5 Functions in Excel

Enter function:

- Select cell range
- Click on the function via menu shown on the right with ∑Autosum in Editing group under Home Tab.

Or

- Select the cell in which you want to enter function value
- Enter symbol "="
- Enter function manually (e.g. "sum"), and cell range to which function will apply.

Most often used functions:

=SUM(cell range)

- adding the numbers in selected cells
- =AVERAGE(cell range)
- finds medium number

=MIN(cell range)

• finds the smallest value

=MAX(cell range)

• finds biggest value

=Count(cell range)

- counts the number of records (only non-blank cells with numeric value)
- =Counta(cell range)
- counts the number of records (only non-blank cells with both alphabets and numeric value)

=round(cell reference, nos. of decimal places)

Text functions -

=lower(Cell reference)

- Converts the text into lower case =upper(cell reference)
- Converts the text into upper case
- =len(cell reference)
- Returns the number of characters the text contains
- =concatenate(cell address1, cell address2, cell address3)
- Combines the values of two or more cells

Date functions-

=today()

Inserts today's date

=now()

Inserts current date and time

Deleting options

- Clear All
- Clear Contents
- Clear Formats

Sort Data

- Sort A to Z sort data within table from minimum to maximum value, or
- Sort Z to A sort data within table from maximum to minimum values

Find & Replace

- Find: enter a word or phrase and press Find button
- Replace:- Find What field to enter word we search;
- > Replace With field to enter word that we want to use as replacement
- Format Painter copy formatting from one part of the text to another
- > Click on ? symbol to get Help in MS Excel or F1 on the keyboard

								Dr. N	ICR HRD	IAP		
5.6 Insert	tab											
	File Home	Insert	Page Layout Formul	las Data Review V	iew PDF	-	-	-		(?) ه	- 6	×
	17		■ 🔹 🖓 Shapes 🔹 ■ 🔄 📲 SmartArt	Column → Market Line → Market			Q	Α		4 · ≥ ·]	
	PivotTable Table		Clip Art Screenshot ▼	Column	Sparkings	Slicer	Hyperlink	Text Box	Header & Footer	Symbo	ols	
	Tables		Illustrations	Charts IV		Filtor	Linke		Toyt			í l

Shapes – after selecting a shape, we can insert it in the sheet using drag-and-drop method, which automatically defines its size and position

Arrange – sets elements in front of (option Bring forward) or behind (option Send to back)

- Opens color palette
- > Opens color palette and options for choosing type and thickness of lines
- Effects: 3D, shadow, reflection, rotation etc.

Pictures

To select a picture: press left mouse button on it, picture will get squares on the border called control points

Set object size:

- Manually: select an object, move some of the control points using drag-and-drop method
- Enter values: press right mouse button on the object and choose Format Picture option; on the Size tab enter values for height and width

While object is selected, we can open the Format tab that contains some new formatting options:

- Corrections tool for contrast, brightness, sharpness correction
- Color change color images in order to better match the rest of the content
- Artistic effects tools that can make a look of an image like it is a drawing or painting
- Tool for inserting text box; after selecting this tool we can set the position and the size of the text box in the worksheet via drag-and-drop method

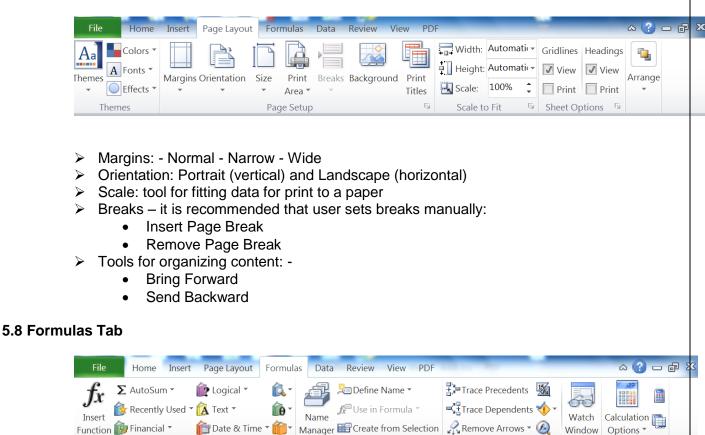
Header and Footer –Click edit -Press left mouse button within header or footer field or

Press right mouse button and from quick menu choose option Edit text

- insert date and time
- insert page number

Insert symbol $\in \pounds \odot \infty \Box \neq$ etc.

5.7 Page Layout Tab



1. Formula uses numerical data found in chosen cell range (the value entered in cell range)

Defined Names

Formula Auditing

Calculation

- 2. Enter the formula:
- 3. Select the cell where you want to enter a formula
- 4. Enter the sign "="
- 5. Enter numeric values or cell addresses and arithmetic operator
- 6. Press the Enter key to complete

Function Library

Any excel function can be inserted through this tab using the Insert Function of the Function Library.

Basic arithmetic operators:

- \blacktriangleright Addition = A1 + A2
- Multiplication = A3 * C5
- \blacktriangleright Division = C5/C3
- \blacktriangleright Exponentiation = F15^A A2

Calculation order

• Microsoft Excel follows the mathematical order of calculation operations.

• Formulas can be seen in the formula bar when cell that contains formula is selected or if we position cursor with double click in the cell that contains formula (this way formula will be visible in cell to, and can be edited in a cell to).

Cell that contains formula and cursor is not positioned in that particular cell, will display formula result.

Function Library

- There are hundreds of functions in Excel, but only some will be useful for the kind of data we work with.
- To explore functions is in the Function Library on the Formulas tab. Here you may search and select Excel functions based on categories such as Financial, Logical, Text, Date & Time, and more.

To Insert a Function from the Function Library:

- Select the cell where the answer will appear (I6, for example)
- Click on the Formulas tab.
- From the Function Library group, select the function category you desire. In this example, we will choose Date & Time.
- Select the desired function from the Date & Time drop-down menu. We will choose the NETWORKDAYS function to count the days between the order date and receive date in our worksheet.

F	ile Home Insert Pa	ge Layout	Formulas	Data	Review		View		
J	fx E is the series of the se		A Date		() Math		More	a la	j ^t a De ∫t [™] Us
	ction v Used v v		* Time			Fu	nctions *		ager 📰 Cr
		Function Li	ibrary	DAY	ŀ				Define
	l6 ▼ (°	f _∞ =NET	rwo	DAYS360					
	А	В		EDATE		_	E		F
2	Office Supply Order Log	Jul-Sep 20	010	EOMONTH					
3									
4	OfficeMax			HOUR					
5	Office Supply	Item Numb	er	MINUTE			Unit P	rice	Subtota
6	File Folders	EGC38290		MONTH			\$	5.86	\$58.6
7	Copy Paper	LBG43576		NETWORKD/	AVS		\$4	0.26	\$80.5
8	Paperclips	CAD789237					\$	4.20	\$42.0
9	Binder Clips (Multi)	CAD256903				the	t date end	date	,holidays)
10	Pens (Blue)	KLH78902		NOV			-	-	
11	Pens (Red)	KLH78904			ns the num			work	days
12	Highligher Pens (Yellow)	STA73298		TIM					
13	Sticky Notes	JUG198430		Pre	ess F1 for n	nor	e help.		
				TIMEVATURE			4	1	4

Function Library Date & Time category

• The Function Arguments dialog box will appear. Insert the cursor in the first field and then enter or select the cell(s) you desire (G6, for example).

	Type boxes	Unit Price \$5.86	\$58.60			Delivery Time KDAYS(G6)			
r	cartons unction Argu	\$40.26 ments	\$80.52	12-Sep	17-Sep		? <mark>x</mark>		
	NETWORKDA	YS Start_date End_date Holidays	G6	11111111111111111111111111111111111111	any =				
nti	= Returns the number of whole workdays between two dates. Start_date is a serial date number that represents the start date. ti								
1	Formula result <u>Help on this fur</u>				C	ОК	Cancel		

Selecting cell for the Start-date field

 Insert the cursor in the next field and then enter or select the cell(s) you desire (H6, for example).

tity	Туре	Unit Price	Subtotal	Date Ordered	Date Receiver	L Delivery Time	2		
10	boxes	\$5.86	\$58.60	12-Sep	🗘 17-Sep	AYS(G6,H6)			
2	cartons	\$40.26	\$80.52	12-Sep	17-Sep)			
r	Function Argu	ments	440.00	in the second			? x		
-	NETWORKDA	rs							
		Start_date	G6		iiii = 40433				
		End_date	H6		i - 40438				
		Holidays			🎫 = any				
tire	Returns the number of whole workdays between two dates. End_date is a serial date number that represents the end date.								
	Formula result <u>Help on this fur</u>	_	- Vie	w formula resi	ult	ок	Cancel		
1	a deservation of the second		Contractor of Contractor	The second second					

Selecting cell for the End date field

• Click OK and the result will appear. Our results show that it took 5 days to receive the order.

Date Ordered	Date Received		
12-Sep	17-Sep	5 R	Result

Formula referencing in Excel

Relative cell referencing

When formula is copied with AutoFill and formula have relative cell references, cell references are going to adapt, for example:

If we use auto fill to copy following formula: =C5+B5 formula will change to: =C6+B6, =C7+B7 etc.

Absolute cell referencing

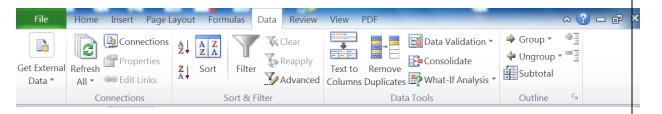
If, in a formula, cell is referenced absolutely then applying autofill tool will result in: =\$C\$5+B5, =\$C\$5+B6, =\$C\$5+B7 etc.

You can change selected cell reference from relative to absolute and vice versa using F4 key

Logical function if

= logical function that compares the values in cells with some expression or a value. Depending on the result we define the appropriate action Syntax: IF(logical _condition; value_if_true; value_if_false) logical function checks if condition is met, and returns true or false logical operators: greater than > greater than or equal >= less than < less than or equal <= equal =

5.9 Data Tab



Sort

Sorting is a common task that allows you to change or customize the order of your spreadsheet data.

1. Select a single cell in the column on which you want to sort.

2. Click $2 \downarrow$ to perform an ascending sort (A to Z or smallest number to largest).



Click \blacksquare to perform a descending sort (Z to A or largest number to smallest). To sort by specific criteria

- 1. Select a single cell anywhere in the range that you want to sort.
- 2. On the Data tab, in the Sort & Filter group, click Sort.

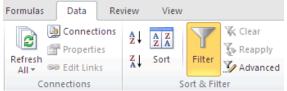


The Sort dialog box appears.

- 3. In the Sort by list, select the first column on which you want to sort.
- 4. In the Sort On list, select either Values, Cell Color, Font Color, or Cell Icon.
- 5. In the Order list, select the order that you want to apply to the sort operation alphabetically or numerically ascending or descending (that is, A to Z or Z to A for text or lower to higher or higher to lower for numbers).

Filters

Activating the Basic Excel Filter



In order to activate the basic Excel filter, select the Data tab at the top of your spreadsheet, and from this, select the option Filter.

You should now have the drop-down menus on each of your header cells, which can be used to select the rows to be displayed.

- (Select All) show all rows
- \$x,xxx Display if cell equals the specific value
- (Blanks) Display all blank cells

The user can untick the values in rows that are not to be displayed.

Removing the Excel Filter

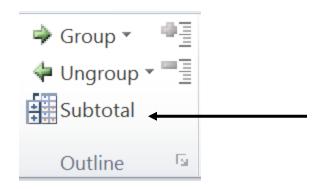
To remove the filter simply select the Data tab at the top of your spreadsheet, and from within this, click on the Filter option.

Insert Subtotals in an Excel 2010 Worksheet

You can use Excel 2010's Subtotals feature to subtotal data in a sorted list. To subtotal a list, you first sort the list on the field for which you want the subtotals, and then you designate the field that contains the values you want summed — these don't have to be the same fields in the list.

Steps to add subtotals to a list in a worksheet:

Sort the list on the field for which you want subtotals inserted. Click the Subtotal button in the Outline group on the Data tab.



The Subtotal dialog box appears.

- > Use the Subtotal dialog box to specify the options for the subtotals.
- 1. Select the field for which the subtotals are to be calculated in the At Each Change In drop-down list.
- 2. Specify the type of totals you want to insert in the Use Function drop-down list.
- 3. Select the check boxes for the field(s) you want to total in the Add Subtotal To list box.
- 4. Click OK.
 - > Excel adds the subtotals to the worksheet.

5.10 Review Tab



Proofing Group :

The first Group that we will look at is Proofing. This has commands for checking spelling and grammar, using research and Thesaurus and ability to translate from one language to another.

Spelling -Opens dialogue box with options: Ignore once, Ignore all, Change, Change all , the word that is not in the dictionary can be added: Press the right mouse button over it and choose Add to dictionary option

Changes Group:

Protect Sheet command will prevent users from accidental updating or deleting vital information from the spreadsheet.

5.11 View tab

File Home Insert Page Lay	out For	rmulas	Data	Review	View PDF					۵ (?)	- @ X
Normal Page Break Preview Page Layout Full Screen	Show	Zoom	100%	Zoom to	New Window Arrange All		175175	Save rkspace V	Switch Vindows *	Macros	
Workbook Views			Zoom			W	indow			Macros	

- Normal for creating a worksheet
- Page Layout for print preview data for print, header and footer
- Zoom Choose offered or enter value
- Freeze and unfreeze rows and columns in order to always be visible:
 - Freezing columns and rows: select cell within sheet and choose Freeze Panes button. Columns to the left and rows above will be "frozen"
 - Freezing top row: choose Freeze Panes button and choose freeze top row
 - Freezing first column: choose Freeze Panes button and choose freeze first column

On the **View** tab, click one of the view options in the **Workbook Views** group.

Normal View: displays the content in normal view. This is usually the view that is used when creating your worksheet.

4	A	В	C	D	E	F
1	1	Series 1	Series 2	Series 3	Total	
2	Category 1	4.3	2.4	2	8.7	
3	Category 2	2.5	4.4	2	8.9	
4	Category 3	3.5	1.8	3	8.3	
5	Category 4	4.5	2.8	5	12.3	
6	Total	14.8	11.4	12		
7						

Page Layout View: displays the content as it would appear on a page if printed. It's similar to Print Preview, but you can still edit the content in this view.

		Cick I	s add header	
der	sent Serent :	Series J Te	tai	
Category 1	4.6 3.4	1	8.7	
Category 2	25 44	1	8.8	
Category 3	13 1.8	1	8.3	
Category 4	45. 38		12.3	
Tetal	14.8 31.4	U.		

Page Break Preview: displays the content as it would appear over several pages. The blue lines can be dragged to reduce the printed size of the content and force it to fit a specific

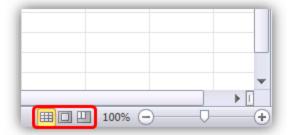
number of pages.

4	A	B	C	D	E	F
1		Series 1	Series 2	Series 3	Total	
2	Category 1	4.3	2.4	2	8.7	
3	Category 2	23	2044	1 2	8.9	
4	Category 3	3.5	994.8	3	8.3	
5	Category 4	4.5	2.8	5	12.3	
б	Total	14.8	11.4	12		
7	1					

Full Screen View: displays only the worksheet – no formula bar, ribbon or status bars are visible. This allows you to maximise the amount of content you see in your worksheet.

4	A	В	C	D	E	F
1		Series 1	Series 2	Series 3	Total	
2	Category 1	4.3	2.4	2	8.7	
3	Category 2	2.5	4.4	2	8.9	
ŧ.	Category 3	3.5	1.8	3	8.3	
5	Category 4	4.5	2.8	5	12.3	
6	Total	14.8	11.4	12		
7						

NOTE: Another way to toggle your worksheet view is to click the **View** buttons in the bottom right-hand corner of your Excel 2010 window next to the Zoom slider. The **Normal**, **Page Layout** and **Page Break View** buttons are displayed.



5.12 Chart

- It is the graphical display of table data in various forms like column, pie and other graph formats.
- Tabular data and graph are connected therefore changes in the table are reflected in the chart.

Select the data click the *Insert* menu and choose the chart type that you wish to draw.

File Hom	e Insert Page Layout Formu	las Data Review View PDI		-	∧ (?) — d= X
PivotTable Table	Image: State of the state	Column Bar * O	es Slicer Hyperlink	Text Header Box & Footer	Ω Symbols
Tables	Illustrations	Charts 🕞	Filter Links	Text	

The data in your Excel sheet will be organized as a chart.

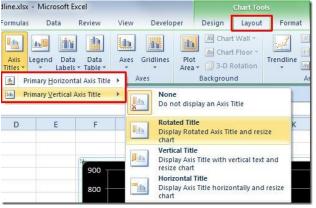
Chart and Graphs Types In Excel 2010

The chart or graph type will depend on the data for which you are going to plot the chart. The most commonly used types include Column Chart, Line Graphs, Pie Chart, Bar Graph, Area Chart, Scatter Graphs, Stock Chart, and Surface Chart, among many others.

- When we insert a chart, a table in Microsoft Excel for data entry opens and we can enter data. Also, if we select cell range filled with data, chart will be automatically filled with selected data.
- To change a size chart: select chart and move (drag-and-drop) control points to the desired direction
- Changes in the chart can be done via the Chart Tools toolbar that appears when the chart is selected; via quick menu or by double-click with left mouse button on the
 - Format Chart Area effects like color fill, 3D, rotation, shadow etc. are accessible
 - Change Chart Type choose chart type
- Move the chart: within the Chart Tools toolbar, select Design and choose tool Move chart:
 - New sheet (and there is a field to enter worksheet name), or
 - Object in > on drop-down menu choose a worksheet in which you want to place a chart

Insert Chart Axis title

Select the chart and navigate to *Chart Tool layout* tab, under Labels group, from Axis Title options, select desired Axis Title Position.

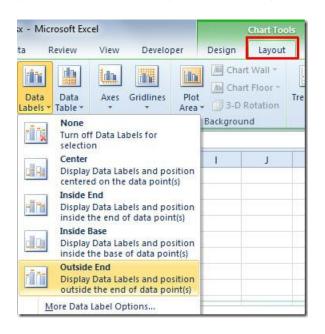


It will insert Text Box at specified position, now enter the title text. Axis titles can be set at any of available positions.

Data labels

With data labels, you can easily view the values that affects chart area in Excel 2010.

To enable data labels in chart, select the chart and head over to Chart Tools Layout tab, from Labels group, under Data Labels options, select a position.



It will show Data labels at specified position.

5.13 Conditional Formatting

Conditional formatting in Excel allows you to highlight cells whose data satisfies certain criteria. Excel enables you to apply formatting to cells that meet certain criteria that you specify.

To apply conditional formatting in Excel 2010, select the cells you want to analyse and then click Home > Styles > Conditional Formatting.

The following box appears

	Highlight Cells Rules	·
10	Top/Bottom Rules	·
	<u>D</u> ata Bars	•
	Color Scales	•
	Icon Sets	•
<u>N</u>	ew Rule	
₿ ⊆	lear Rules	
	lanage <u>R</u> ules	

Highlight Cells Rules

Greater Than		? 🛛
Format cells that are GREATER THAN:		
5000	with	Light Red Fill with Dark Red Text Light Red Fill with Dark Red Text Yellow Fill with Dark Yellow Text Green Fill with Dark Green Text
		Light Red Fill Red Text Red Border Custom Format

5.14 Data Validation

Data validation is a feature available in Microsoft Excel. It allows you to do the following:

- Make a list of the entries that restricts the values allowed in a cell.
- Create a prompt message explaining the kind of data allowed in a cell.
- Create messages that appear when incorrect data has been entered.
- Check for incorrect entries by using the Auditing toolbar.
- Set a range of numeric values that can be entered in a cell.
- Determine if an entry is valid based on calculation in another cell.

Make a List of Entries Allowed in the Cell

You can make a list of the entries you will accept for a cell on a worksheet. You can then restrict the cell to accept only entries taken from the list by using the data validation feature.

To create a drop-down list and restrict values in the cell to these entries, follow these steps:

- 1. Select cell A1.
- 2. On the **Data** menu, click **Validation**.
- 3. On the **Settings** tab, click **List** in the **Allow** drop-down list.
- 4. By default, the **Ignore blank** and **In-cell Dropdown** check boxes are selected. Do not change them.

5. In the **Source** box, type a,b,c. Click **OK**.

NOTES:

You can also enter a named range or cell reference if it contains a list of values. Both must be preceded by an equal sign. There is a 255 character limitation for this dialog.

- Cell A1 now has a drop-down list next to it and you can use this list to select the value to enter in the cell.
- > Click the drop-down list and then click any item it contains.

This value will be entered in the cell.

NOTE: You can manually enter "a", "b", or "c", (without quotation marks) in the cell; you do not have to select these from the list. If you try to manually enter anything other these values, a stop message appears and you are unable to keep the value in this cell. Your only options are **Retry** or **Cancel**.

Set a Range of Numeric Values That Can Be Entered in a Cell

You can place limits on the data that can be entered in a cell, you can set minimums and maximums or check for the effect an entry might have on another cell.

- 1. Select cell A5.
- 2. On the **Data** menu, click **Validation** and click the **Settings** tab.
- 3. In the **Allow** list, click **Whole number.**
- 4. In the **Data** list, click **between.**
- 5. In the **Minimum** box, enter 1.
- 6. In the **Maximum** box, enter 10.

NOTE: You can use cell references for Steps 5 and 6 to specify cells that contain the minimum and maximum values.

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Enter the value 3 in cell A5. The value is entered without error.
- 9. Enter the value 33 in cell A5.

Because the data validation settings you created for cell A1 (an Information Alert) do not apply to those for cell A5, you receive a Stop Alert message (which is the default value) and your only options are to click **Retry** or **Cancel**.

10. Click **Cancel**. The value of 3 appears in the cell.

5.15 Printing in Excel

Print worksheets, workbooks, and selections of cells. Prepare for printing by modifying page orientation, scale, margins, Print Titles, and page breaks.

Print ଢ	Print Copies: 1
Printer	
Lexmark Ready	

Print Pane:

- 1. Click the **File** tab. This takes you to **Backstage view**.
- 2. Select **Print**. The **Print pane** appears, with the **print settings** on the left and the **Print Preview** on the right.

🖬 Save Save As 🎯 Open 📬 Close	Print Print Copreti 1	:								
brfo Recent New Print Save & Send Help Options Sate & Send	Printer Printer Printer Printer Printer Printer Print Active Sheets Print Prin		0000 Autorate 0001 Autorate 0001 Autorate 0001 Band 0001 Band	editors C Soviews Marking Mark	City Constru- School The Constru- tion of the Construction of the	400 9.144 20 9.027 20 9.027 4 9.027 7 9.027 7 9.027 7 9.027 20 9.027 20 9.027 20 9.027 20 9.027 21 9.027 21 9.027 22 9.027 23 9.027 24 9.029 25 9.027 26 9.029 27 9.029 26 9.029 27 9.029 26 9.029 27 9.029 28 9.029 29 9.029 20 9.029 20 9.029 20 9.029 20 9.029 20 9.029 20 9.029 20 9.029 20 9.029	Chang 1	Num Media 10 1 1 10 1 1 1 10 1 1 1 1 10 1 1 1 1 1 10 1 1 1 1 1 1 10 1 <	0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.0% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0 3.04.1% 0	

Print Active Sheets:

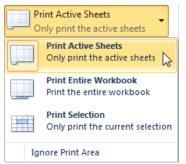
Excel gives the option to **Print Active Sheets**. A worksheet is considered active if it is **selected**.

1. Select the worksheets you want to print. To print multiple worksheets, click on the first worksheet, hold down the **Ctrl key**, then click on the other worksheets you want to select.



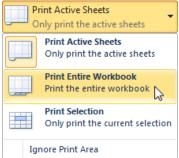
Selecting worksheets to print

- 2. Click the File tab.
- 3. Select **Print** to access the **Print pane**.
- 4. Select **Print Active Sheets** from the **print range** drop-down menu.



Selecting the Print Active Sheets command

- 5. Click the **Print** button. *Print the Entire Workbook:*
- 1. Click the **File** tab.
- 2. Select **Print** to access the **Print pane**.
- 3. Select Print Entire Workbook from the print range drop-down menu.



Selecting the Print Entire Workbook command

4. Click the **Print** button.

Print a Selection, or Set the Print Area:

Printing a selection (sometimes called setting the print area) lets you choose the cells to print.

1. Select the cells that you want to print.

-		А		В	С		
	1	Employee Name	Janu	lary	February		
	2	Allenson, Carol	\$	5,897.00	\$	2,356.00	
	3	Altman, Zoey	\$	666.00	\$	6,210.00	
	4	Aurelio, Fies	\$	5,889.00	\$	9,385.00	
	5	Aurelio, Vig	\$	8,765.00	\$	9,258.00	
	6	Bergman, Jeffery	\$	1,928.00	\$	6,595.00	
	7	Bittiman, William	\$	4,108.00	\$	7,172.00	
	8	Carlson, David	\$	6,302.00	\$	358.00	
	9	Carlton, Potter	\$	3,647.00	\$	2,858.00	
54		cted cells to print					

Selected cells to print

- 2. Click the **File** tab.
- 3. Select **Print** to access the **Print pane**.
- 4. Select **Print Selection** from the **print range** drop-down menu.

Print Active Sheets Only print the active sheets								
	Print Active Sheets Only print the active sheets							
	Print Entire Workbook Print the entire workbook							
	Print Selection Only print the current selection							
Igr	nore Print Area							

Selecting the Print Selection command

5. You can see what your selection will look like on the page in **Print Preview**.

Auralia, Fias	10 mm 1 5552 2 5552 3 5552 3 5552 5 514520

Print Preview

6. Click the **Print** button.

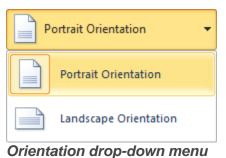
Select the cells you want to print, go to the Page Layout tab, and choose Print Area->

set the print area. This will place a dotted line around the selection.

Change Page Orientation:

Change the page orientation to **Portrait** to orient the page vertically or **Landscape** to orient the page horizontally. Portrait is useful for worksheets needing to fit **more rows** on one page, and Landscape is useful for worksheets needing to fit **more columns** on one page.

- 1. Click the **File** tab.
- 2. Select **Print** to access the **Print pane**.
- 3. Select either **Portrait Orientation** or **Landscape Orientation** from the **orientation** drop-down menu.





Statute -	1	115		-	181	100	1410	122	1000	1.01	1121	1001	111
Carles of Carles		-		-		-		-		-	-	-	
Tollings	1 1001	100	100	100	110		12		120 1	100			110
11.12	1,102.1												
6.1.a.	1 100	180	100	1000	1200	120	1201	1818-1	1949 1	100	182	1000	- 110
101110 0100	1 100	100	-	100	100	1.464	- 22	-	111	100		Line I	100
States and	1 100			-		-		-			-	-	
010M										-			
Tool and	1.0002	100	12212	100	100	- 122 1	1000	1221	122.1	100	- 1222 1	122	222
	1.100	180	1000	- 100	184	100	100	100	100.0	100	100	-	
1.01.02	1	-	1000		184				1000	-	100	-	1.0.00
10.22	1.1011	100	100	-		-			100	-		-	
1275	1 1001	10			10		122	100			112		111
to the		100		1200	122	1000	122.1	1000		-	100	1201	10.00
-	1 10 1	100	188	100	150	100	12.0	100	100.1	180	1000	-	
C.F. No.	1 12	100		100	-	- 22	10.00	Labor 1	1810-1	1000		Labor -	100
COLUMN TWO IS NOT	1.121.1	122			-100	- 222	1000	-	100		1000		
	1 1351	12	100	121		121	12	Links 1			100	Contra I	
Contract of Contract	1 122 1	122	100	1000	100	122	1221	1000		122	152 1	1000	110
Teres Li	1.100.0	-	18180 1	- 100			1000	1818.1	100.0	100	10.0	-	
tanta and	1000	100	Amer. I	100	100		10.00	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	
RELEVAL.	1.000	-											
10.11				100			100	100	1201	100			
215*	1.100.0	122	122 1	1000	100	1000	122	2002 3	122.1	100		1200.1	
64.6×6	1 100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	1000	100	1200	100	
See.	1 1000	122			1000	100		1000	10.00	-	122	And Inc.	-
Trans.	1.000	-100			1000	-	1000	120	122.1	100	100	-	
				122	100		100	10	1001	100		100	
State of an and a state of a stat	1 122 1	100	1120	120	1000		100	1.000	1000	1000	1000	120	
and the second second	1 101	12		100	125	100	18.0	184	-10	120	120	100	-
MARINE.	1.100.0	-	1000	1000		1000			10.00	100	10000	Contract of	10.00

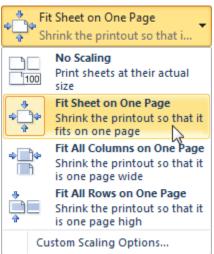
Portrait Orientation in Print Preview

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

		2.2	 	 	 	 	 	100
 12			 	 	 	 	 	
		• •	 	 	 	 	 	
		• •	 	 	 	 	 	
		= :	 	 	 	 	 	
		•	 	 	 	 	 	
		= :	 	 	 	 	 	
 12			 	 	 	 	 	
		= :	 	 	 	 	 	
 1.		2.1	 	 	 	 	 	
 12			 	 	 	 	 	
	 -		 	 	 	 	 	
	 -		 	 	 	 	 	
 12			 	 	 	 	 	
		2.1	 	 	 	 	 	
 - 12			 	 	 	 	 	
	 -		 	 	 	 	 	
 16			 	 	 	 	 	
	 -	•••	 	 	 	 	 	
	 -		 	 	 	 	 	
	 -		 	 	 	 	 	
		• •	 	 	 	 	 	
 1.	 		 	 	 	 	 	
 - 12			 	 	 	 	 	
 16			 	 	 	 	 	
 11		• •	 	 	 	 	 	
11			 	 	 	 	 	
 11	 -		 	 	 	 	 	
 16			 	 	 	 	 	
 12		= :	 	 	 	 	 	
 16			 	 	 	 	 	
	 -		 	 	 	 	 	

Fit a Worksheet on One Page:

- 1. Click the File tab.
- 2. Select **Print** to access the **Print pane**.
- 3. Select **Fit Sheet on One Page** from the **scaling** drop-down menu.



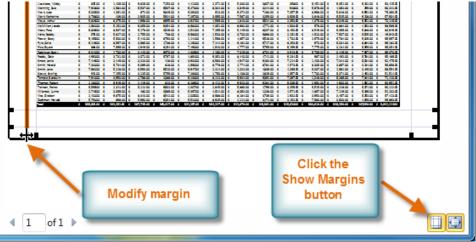
Selecting the Fit Sheet on One Page command

4. The worksheet is reduced in size until it fits on one page. If it is scaled too small it might be difficult to read.

Modify Margins in Print Preview:

The margins of the worksheet may need to be adjusted to make data fit more comfortably on the printed page. You can adjust the margins in **Print Preview**.

- 1. Click the File tab.
- 2. Select **Print** to access the **Print pane**.
- 3. Click on the **Show Margins** button. Your margins will appear.
- 4. Hover your mouse over one of the **margin markers** until the **double arrow** ↔ appears.
- 5. Click and drag the margin to your desired location.
- 6. Release the mouse. The margin is modified.



Modifying Margins while in Print Preview

Print Titles:

The **Print Titles** command allows to select specific rows and columns to appear on each page.

- 1. Click the **Page Layout** tab.
- 2. Select the **Print Titles** command.

				SalesR	ecord.xlsx	- N	licr		
Page Layout Fo	rmulas Data	Revie	w Vi	ew					
		2		Width:	Automatic	*	Gr		
Orientation Size F	rint Breaks Bac	karound.	Print	Height:	1 page	*			
	rea * *	.kgrounu	Titles	🖳 Scale:	74%	÷			
Page 9	etup	E C	Scale t	o Fit	Fai	1			
<i>f</i> ∗ Emplo	yee Name		Print Titles						
В	С		Specify rows and columns to						
January	February	Mar	repeat on each printed page.						
\$ 671.00	\$ 3,381.0	00 \$	Pres	ss F1 for more	help.				
4	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	- 4							

Selecting the Print Titles command

3. The **Page Setup** dialog box appears. Click the icon at the end of the **Rows to repeat at top** field.

Page Setup	? ×
Page Margins Header/Footer Sheet	
Print <u>a</u> rea:	(ES)
Print titles	
Rows to repeat at top:	
Columns to repeat at left:	E
Print Gridlines	
Black and white	Comments: (None)
Draft guality	Cell errors as: displayed
Row and column headings	
Page order	
Over, then down Over, then down Over Over	
	Print Print Preview Options
	OK Cancel

Clicking on icon

4. Mouse becomes the small **selection arrow** →. Click on the rows you want to appear on each printed page. The **Rows to repeat at top** dialog box will record the selection.

me	January		Februa	iry	March		April		Mav
	S	671.00	Ś	3.381.00	Ś	403.00	Ś	432.00	<u>\$ 8,</u> 0
Page Setup - Ro	ows to repe	eat at top);					8	X 2
\$1:\$1									9
	به م	013100	Ŷ	2,070100	¥ .	., <u>200100</u>	Y -	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	,6
	\$1:\$1	\$1:\$1	\$1:\$1	mani là olorado là Attàr	\$1:\$1	\$1:\$1 	\$1:\$1	\$1:\$1 	\$1:\$1

Clicking on row 1

5. Click the icon at the end of the **Rows to repeat at top** field.

Page Setup - Rows to repeat at top:	8 ×
\$1:\$1	
	NC

Clicking on icon

- 6. Repeat for **Columns to repeat at left**, if necessary.
- 7. Click **OK**. You can go to **Print Preview** to see how each page will look when printed.

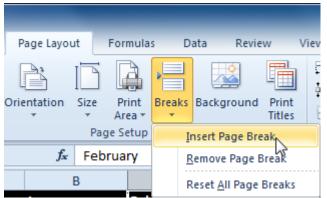
Insert a Break:

- 1. Click the **Page Layout** tab.
- 2. Determine the placement of the break by clicking on the **row below**, **cell below**, or **column to the right** of where you want the break to appear. For example, select column C and a break will appear after column B.

		C1 •	f _x	February	/	
		А	В		∔ c	
1	1 Employee Name		January		February	
2	Alle	enson, Carol	\$	5,897.00	\$	2,356.00
3	Alt	man, Zoey	\$	666.00	\$	6,210.00
4	Aur	relio, Fies	\$	5,889.00	\$	9,385.00
5	Au		\$	8,765.00	\$	9,258.00
6	Be	Break will appear	\$	1,928,00	\$	6,595.00
7	Bi	here	\$	4,108.00	\$	7,172.00
8	Ca.		\$	6,302.00	\$	358.00
9	Car	lton, Potter	\$	3,647.00	\$	2,858.00
10	Cha	antay, Marjan	\$	7,916.00	\$	2,611.00
11	Col	lin, Bevell	\$	8,985.00	\$	539.00
12	Col	lman, Harry	\$	5,019.00	\$	4,573.00

Selecting the column to the right of where the break will appear

3. Select the Insert Page Break command from the Breaks drop-down menu.



Selecting the Insert Page Break command

4. The break is inserted. **Print Preview** to confirm it appears in the correct place on the page.

MS-PowerPoint 2010

PowerPoint 2010 Ribbon Tabs

Ribbon Tab Name	Command Groups
Home	Clipboard, Slides, Font, Paragraph, Drawing and Editing
Insert	Tables, Images, Illustrations, Links, Text, Symbols, and Media
Design	Page Setup, Themes, and Background
Transitions	Preview, Transition to This Slide, and Timing
Animations	Preview, Animation, Advanced Animation, and Timing
Slide Show	Start Slide Show, Comments, and Compare
Review	Proofing, Language, Comments, and Compare
View	Presentation Views, Master Views, Show, Zoom, Colo r/Grayscale, Window, and Macros

PowerPoint 2010

PowerPoint to Create a Slide Presentation

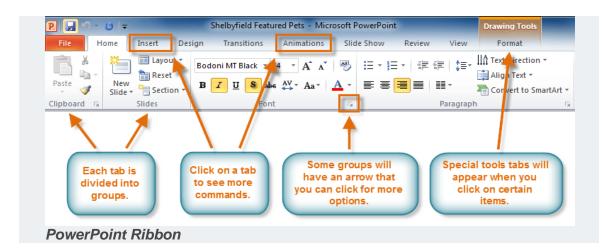
PowerPoint uses slides to build a **presentation**. In order to create a presentation, PowerPoint allows you to add text, bulleted lists, images, charts, video and more to your slides. You can add as many slides as you like to a presentation and at any time you can view or playback your presentation by selecting one of the Slide Show play options.

PowerPoint Environment

The Ribbon and the Quick Access Toolbar are where you will find the commands you need to do common tasks in PowerPoint.

6.1 Ribbon

The Ribbon contains multiple **tabs**, each with several **groups** of commands. Some tabs, like "Drawing Tools" or "Table Tools," may appear only when you are working with certain items like images or tables. In addition, you can add your own customized tabs that contain your desired commands.

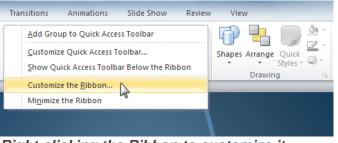


Customize the Ribbon

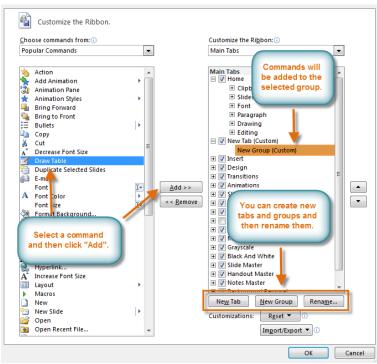
You can customize the Ribbon by creating your own **tabs** that house your desired commands. Commands are always housed within a **group**, and you can create as many groups as you need to keep your tabs organized.

In addition, you can even add commands to any of the default tabs, as long as you create a custom group within the tab.

1. Right-click the Ribbon and select Customize the Ribbon. A dialog box will appear.



- Right-clicking the Ribbon to customize it
- 2. Click **New Tab**. A new tab will be created with a new group inside it.
- 3. Make sure the new group is selected.
- 4. Select a command from the list on the left, then click **Add**. You can also drag commands directly into a group.
- 5. After adding commands click **OK**.



Customize Ribbon Dialog Box

 If you do not see the command you want, click on the Choose commands drop-down box and select All Commands.

Choose commands from: (i)	Customize the Ri <u>b</u> bon: (i)	
Popular Commands 🔹	Main Tabs	
Popular Commands		
Commands Not in the Ribbon	Main Tabs	
All Commands	🖃 📝 Home	
Macros	Clipboard	
File Tab	⊞ Slides	
All Tabs	Font	
Main Tabs	Paragraph	
Tool Tabs	Drawing	
Custom Tabs and Groups	🖃 📝 New Tab (Custom)	

Minimize and Maximize the Ribbon

The Ribbon is designed to be responsive to your current task and easy to use, you can **minimize** it.

1. Click the **arrow** in the upper-right corner of the Ribbon to minimize it.

-				
🕵 Sound:	[No Sound]	*	Advance Slide	
Ouration	n: 00.50	+	📝 On Mouse Click	
Apply To	All		After: 00:00.00 ‡	
	Tin	ning		
		only	e Ribbon (Ctrl+F1) the tab names on the	

Minimize the Ribbon button

2. To maximize the Ribbon, click the arrow again.

When the Ribbon is minimized, you can make it reappear by clicking on a tab. The Ribbon will disappear again when you are not using it.

Quick Access Toolbar

The Quick Access Toolbar is located above the Ribbon, and it lets you access common commands no matter which tab you are on. By default, it shows the Save, Undo, and Repeat commands. You can add other commands to make it more convenient for you.

Add Commands to the Quick Access Toolbar:

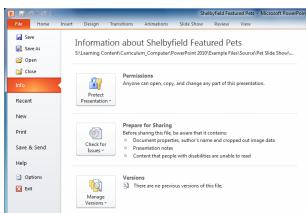
- 1. Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the Quick Access Toolbar.
- 2. Select the **command** you wish to add from the drop-down menu. To choose from more commands, select More Commands.

P 🔒 🕯	9 - 13	-		_
File	Home	Cus	tomize Quick Access Toolbar	Animations
			New	
			Open	
Preview	Nor	\checkmark	Save	Push
Preview			E-mail	
Slides	Outlin		Quick Print	
1			Print Preview and Add to Quick A	ccess Toolbar
1			Spelling	
-		\checkmark	Undo	
	Shelbyfi Shelbyfi Res	\checkmark	Redo	
M	inal Res		Slide Show From Beginning	
			Open Recent File	
2			More Commands	
* _50,185 1858/17 1878/17			Show Below the Ribbon	

Adding a command to the Quick Access toolbar Backstage View

Backstage view gives you various options for saving, opening a file, printing, or sharing your document. It is a full-page view.

1. Click the File tab.

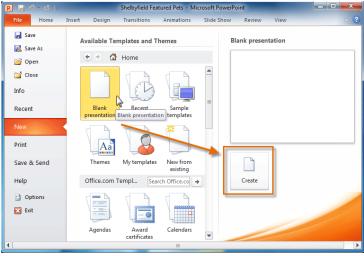


Backstage View

- You can choose an option on the left side of the page.
- To get back to your document, just click any tab on the Ribbon.

6.2 Create a New Presentation

- 1. Click the File tab.
- 2. Select New.
- 3. Select **Blank presentation** under **Available Templates and Themes**. It will be highlighted by default.
- 4. Click **Create**. A new, blank presentation appears in the PowerPoint window.



Creating a new presentation

Open an Existing Presentation:

1. Click the File tab.

2. Select **Open**. The Open dialog box appears.

					- 0 X
🕒 🗢 📕 « Pow	erPoi	nt 2010 ► Example Files ► Source ► Files	🔹 👻 😽 Searc	th Files	م م
Organize 👻 😰 C	pen	✓ Print Burn New folder			
🔆 Favorites	*	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size
🧾 Desktop		🐌 Downloads	11/22/2010 3:37 PM	File folder	
鷆 Downloads		퉬 Misc	11/22/2010 3:38 PM	File folder	
📃 Recent Places		🎉 Personal	11/22/2010 3:37 PM	File folder	
	Ξ	🖭 American History Flash Cards	11/22/2010 9:43 AM	Microsoft PowerP	1,423 KB
🥞 Libraries		🖭 Mongibello Artisan Pasta	11/22/2010 3:07 PM	Microsoft PowerP	3,798 KB
Documents		Shelbyfield Featured Pets	11/18/2010 2:10 PM	Microsoft PowerP	1,416 KB
🚽 Music		🖭 Wellness Program	icrosoft PowerPoint Presentat	ion irosoft PowerP	2,724 KB
Pictures Videos		Size: 1.38			

Opening a presentation

Select your desired presentation and then click **Open**.
 If you have opened the existing presentation recently, it may be easier to

choose Recent from the File tab instead of Open to search for your presentation.

P	Shelbyfield Featured Pets - Microsoft
File Home	Insert Design Transitions Animations Slide Show Review
🛃 Save	Recent Presentations
🚰 Open	American History Flash Cards S:\Learning Content\Curriculum_Computer\PowerPoin
🚞 Close	Mongibello Artisan Pasta S:\Learning Content\Curriculum_Computer\PowerPoin
Info	Shelbyfield Featured Pets S:\Learning Content\Curriculum_Computer\PowerPoin
Recent	

Opening a recent presentation Slide Basics

Slides contain **placeholders**, which are areas on the slide that are enclosed by dotted borders. Placeholders can contain many different items, including text, pictures, charts, and more. Some placeholders have **placeholder text**, or text that you can replace. They also have **thumbnail-sized icons** that represent specific commands such as Insert Picture, Insert Chart, and Insert Clip Art. In PowerPoint, hover over each icon to see the type of content you can insert in a placeholder.

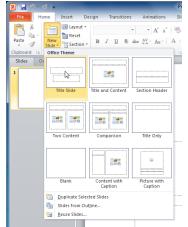
_	Click to add title
Placeholders	Click to add text Placeholder text
	loons to insert different types of content

PowerPoint slide with placeholders

Slide Layouts

The placeholders are arranged in different **layouts** that can be **applied to existing slides**, or chosen when you **insert a new slide**. A slide layout **arranges** your content using different types of placeholders, depending on what kind of information you might want to include in your presentation.

In the example above, the layout is called **Title and Content** and includes title and content placeholders. While each layout has a descriptive name, you can also tell from the image of the layout how the placeholders will be arranged.

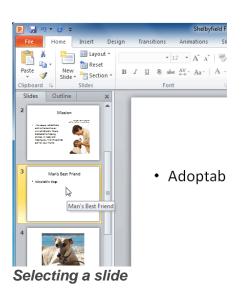


Slide layout menu Customizing Slide Layouts

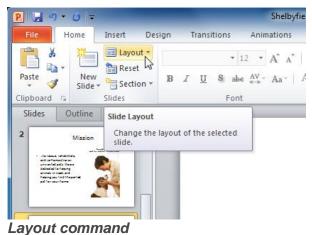
Change the Layout of an Existing Slide

1. Select the slide you wish to change.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

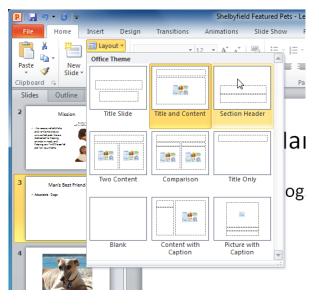


2. Click the **Layout** command in the **Slides** group on the **Home** tab. A menu will appear with your options.



Choose a layout from the menu. The slide will change in the presentation.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

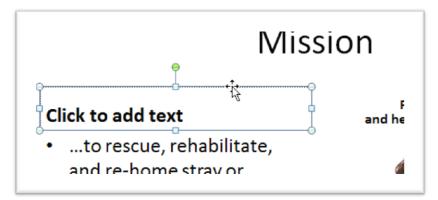




Delete a Placeholder:

You can customize your layout by deleting unwanted or "extra" placeholders from any slide.

- Position your mouse on the **dotted border** of the placeholder so it changes to a **cross** with arrows
- 2. Click the border to select it.



A selected placeholder

3. Press **Backspace** or **Delete** on your keyboard. The placeholder will be removed from the slide.

Add a Text Box:

Text boxes allow you to add to your current layout, so you can place text wherever you want on your slide.

1. From the **Insert** tab, click the **Text Box** command.

-		Presentation1	- Microsoft PowerPoint
Insert Design	Transitions Animations	Slide Show	Review View
	🗗 🚡 🥼		
Clip Screenshot Photo Art + Album +	Shapes SmartArt Chart	Hyperlink Action	Text Header WordArt Date Slide Box & Footer & & Time Number
Images	Illustrations	Links	Text
			Text Box Insert a text box into the document, or add text to the selected shape.

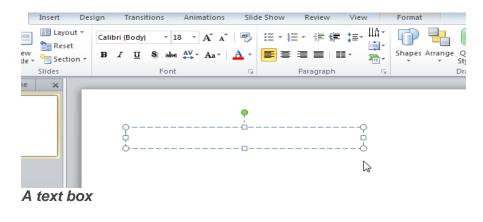
Text Box command

2. Your cursor will turn into an **upside-down cross** 4.

Insert Design	Transitions Animations	Slide Show	Review View
	🗇 🗃 💼		
Clip Screenshot Photo Art * Album*	Shapes SmartArt Chart	Hyperlink Action	Text Header WordArt Date Slide Box & Footer ▼ & Time Number
Images	Illustrations	Links	Text
ne X			
	L		

Text Box cursor

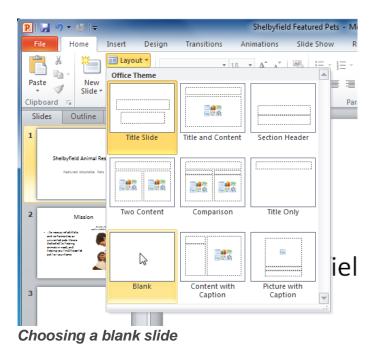
3. Click, hold, and drag your mouse to draw a text box. A text box will appear.



Blank Slide

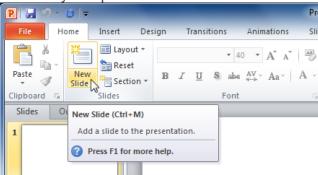
Blank slides can be customized by adding your own text boxes, pictures, charts, and more.

• Select **Blank** from the menu of layout options.



Insert a New Slide:

1. From the **Home** tab, click the bottom half of the **New Slide** command to open the menu of slide layout options.



New Slide command

2. Select the slide you want to insert.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

P 🖬 🤊 - (7 ↓
File Ho	ne Insert Design Transitions Animations S
Paste	$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $
Clipboard 🕞	Office Theme
Slides Ou	Title Slide Title and Content Section Header
	Two Content Comparison Title Only
	Blank Content with Picture with Caption Caption
	Duplicate Selected Slides
	Slides from Outline
	Reuse Slides

Choosing a slide

3. A new slide will be added your presentation.

To instantly add a slide that uses the same layout as the one you have selected, simply click the top half of the **New Slide** command.



Copy and Paste a Slide:

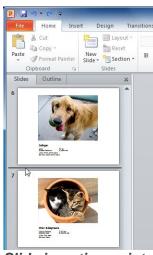
- 1. On the **Slides** tab in the left pane, select the slide you wish to copy.
- 2. Click the **Copy** command on the **Home** tab. You can also right-click your selection and choose **Copy**.

File	Home	Insert	Design	Trans	ition
Paste	Cut Copy - Pormat Pa Clipboard		lew de + Sec Slides	et	в
Slid 3	Copy (Ctrl+C Copy the s the Clipbo	election an	d put it on		

Copy command

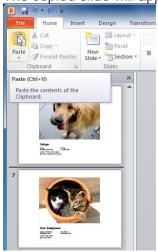
3. In the left pane, click just below a slide (or between two slides) to choose the location where you want the copy to appear. A **horizontal insertion point** will mark the location.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Slide insertion point

4. Click the **Paste** command on the Home tab. You can also right-click and choose **Paste**. The copied slide will appear.



Paste command

To select multiple slides, press and hold **Ctrl** on your keyboard, and click the slides you wish to select.

Duplicate a Slide:

An alternative to Copy and Paste, **Duplicate** copies the selected slide and, in one step, pastes it directly underneath. It is more convenient for quickly inserting similar slides.

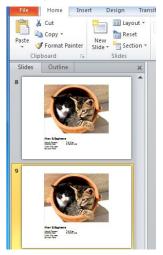
- 1. Select the slide you wish to duplicate.
- 2. Click the New Slide command.
- 3. Choose Duplicate Selected Slides from drop-down menu.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

₽			
File Home Inser	t Design Tra	ansitions Animati	ons Slide Show
Cut a Copy → Paste → ✓ Format Painter	Layout +	B I U S	• 20 • A A A A a a abs AV A A A A
Clipboard 🕞	Office Theme		- G
Slides Outline	Title Slide		
	litle Slide	Title and Content	Section Header
Van Espens Balanse Balanse Balanse			
	Two Content	Comparison	Title Only
9			
Bastrix .	Blank	Content with Caption	Picture with Caption
Restriction Print and Line Austra Define Landy a to analysis			capitoli
	Duplicate Sele	cted Slides	
10	Slides from Ou	ıtline	
10	🛅 Reuse Slides		
65			

Duplicate Selected Slides command

4. A copy of the selected slide appears underneath the original.



A duplicated slide

Delete a Slide

- 1. Select the slide you wish to delete.
- 2. Press the **Delete** or **Backspace** key on your keyboard.

Move a Slide:

1. Select the slide you wish to move.

2. Click, hold, and **drag** your mouse to a new location. A horizontal insertion point will mark the location.



3. **Release** the mouse button. The slide will appear in the new location.

6.3Slide Views

The **slide view commands** are located on the bottom right of the PowerPoint window in Normal View.



Slide view options

Normal View:

This is the default view where you create and edit your slides. You can also move slides in the Slides tab in the pane on the left.



Normal View

Slide Sorter View:

In this view, miniature slides are arranged on the screen. You can drag and drop slides to easily reorder them, and see more slides at one time.





Reading View:

This view fills most of the computer screen with a preview of your presentation. Unlike Slide Show View, it includes easily accessible buttons for navigation, located at the bottom right.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Reading View

Slide Show View:

This view completely fills the computer screen, and is what the audience will see when they view the presentation. Slide Show View has an additional menu that appears when you hover over it, allowing you to navigate through the slides, and access other features you can use during a presentation.



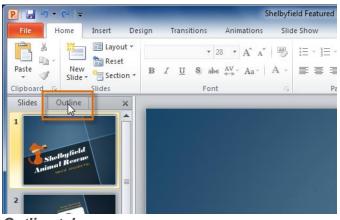
Slide Show View

Use the keys on your keyboard (including the arrow keys, Page Up and Page Down, space bar, and Enter) to move through the slides in Slide Show view. Press the Esc key to end the slide show.

View an Outline of Presentation:

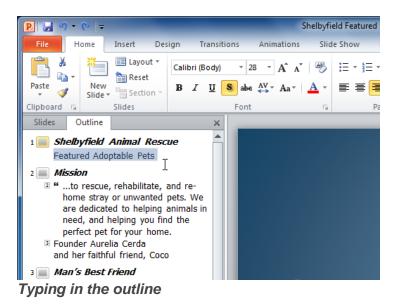
The Outline tab shows your slide text in outline form. This allows you to quickly edit your slide text, and view the contents of multiple slides at once.

1. Click the **Outline** tab in the left pane.



Outline tab

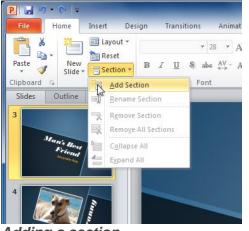
- 2. An outline of your slide text appears.
- 3. Type directly in the pane to make changes to your text.



Organize Slides into Sections

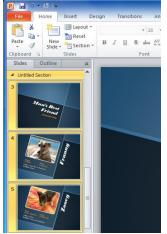
You can organize your slides into sections to make your presentation easier to navigate. Sections can be collapsed or expanded in the left pane, and named for easy reference.

- Select the slide that you want to begin your first section.
- From the Home tab, click the Section command.
- Choose Add Section from the drop-down menu.



Adding a section

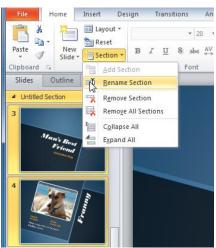
An Untitled Section appears in the left pane.



An untitled section

To rename the section while it is still selected, click the **Section** command, and choose **Rename Section** from the drop-down menu.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Renaming a section

1. Enter your new section name in the dialog box. Then click Rename.



Rename Section dialog box

- 2. Repeat to add as many sections as you need.
- 3. In the left pane, click the arrow next to a section name to collapse or expand it.

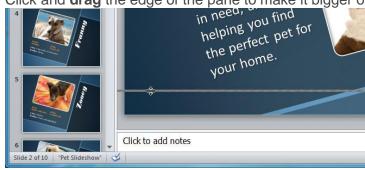


An expanded section Add Notes to Slides

PowerPoint gives you the ability to add notes to your slides, often called **speaker notes**, to help you deliver or prepare for your presentation. You can enter and view your speaker notes using the Notes pane or the Notes Page View.

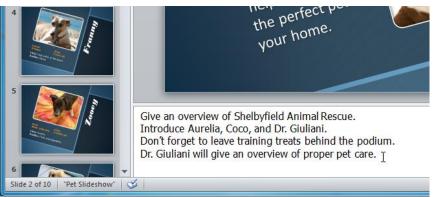
Notes Pane

- 1. Locate the **Notes** pane at the bottom of the screen, directly below the **Slide** pane.
- 2. Click and **drag** the edge of the pane to make it bigger or smaller, if desired.



Adjusting the Notes pane

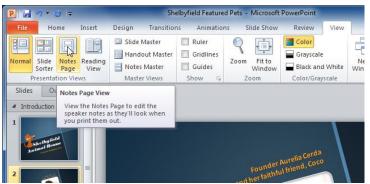
3. Type your notes in the **Notes** pane.



Typing in the Notes pane

Notes Page View

- 1. Go to the View tab.
- 2. Click the **Notes Page** command in the **Presentation Views** group.



Notes Page command

3. Type your notes in the **text box**, or use the **scroll bar** to review your slides.

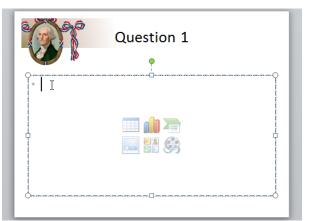
Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Using the Notes Page View

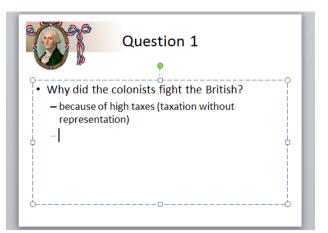
Insert Text

- 1. Click the placeholder or text box where you want to insert text.
- 2. The insertion point appears.



Text insertion point

3. Type directly into the placeholder or text box.



Typing in a placeholder or text box

Some placeholders automatically format your text in a **bulleted list**.

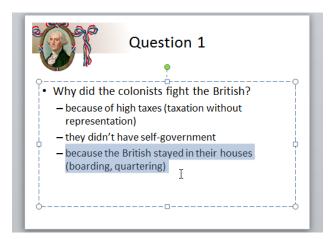
To remove the bullets, deselect the **Bullets** command in the **Paragraph** group on the **Home** tab.

Delete Text

- 1. Place the **insertion point** next to the text you wish to delete.
- 2. Press the **Backspace** key on your keyboard to delete text to the **left** of the insertion point.
- 3. Press the **Delete** key on your keyboard to delete text to the **right** of the insertion point.

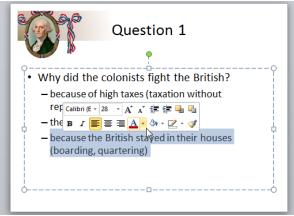
Select Text

- 1. Place the **insertion point** next to the text you wish to select.
- 2. Click the mouse button, and, while holding it down, drag the mouse over the text.
- 3. Release the mouse. The text will be selected. A **highlighted box** will appear over the selected text.



Selected text

4. When you select text in PowerPoint, a hover toolbar with formatting options appears. This makes formatting commands easily accessible. If the toolbar does not appear move the mouse over the selection



Hover toolbar

Copy and Paste Text

- 1. Select the text you wish to copy.
- 2. Click the **Copy** command on the Home tab. You can also right-click your selection and choose **Copy**.



Copy command

- 3. Place your insertion point where you wish the text to appear.
- 4. Click the **Paste** command on the Home tab. The text will appear.



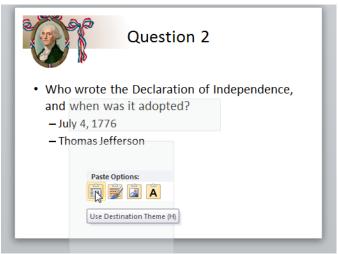
Cut and Paste Text

- 1. Select the text you wish to cut.
- 2. Click the **Cut** command on the **Home** tab. You can also right-click your selection and

P 🚽	5-0	Ŧ	A	merican
File	Home	Insert	Design	Trans
Ê	*	Layout	Cali	bri (Body
Paste • Clipboa	III Sli	ew de + 😁 Section Slides	. В	ΙŪ
Slides 1	Cut (Ctrl+) Cut the s Clipboar	election and put	t <mark>it on th</mark>	e
	comn			4

- 3. Place your insertion point where you wish the text to appear.
- 4. Click the **Paste** command on the Home tab. The text will reappear.

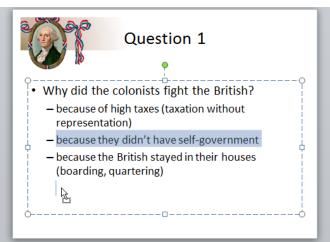
You can also cut, copy, and paste by right-clicking your slide and choosing the desired action from the drop-down menu. When you use this method to paste, you can choose from four options that determine how the text will be formatted: **Use Destination Theme**, **Keep Source Formatting**, **Picture** and **Keep Text Only**.



Right-click Paste Options

Drag and Drop Text

- 1. Select the text you wish to copy.
- 2. Click, hold, and **drag** your mouse to the location where you want the text to appear. The cursor will have a rectangle under it to indicate that you are moving text.



Moving text

3. Release the mouse button, and the text will appear.

If text **does not appear** in the exact location you wish, you can press the **Enter** key on your keyboard to move the text to a new line.

Find and Replace

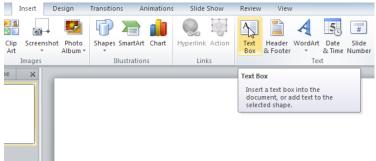
Find and Replace can be used to edit text. Find and Replace allows you to search all of your slides for a specific word or phrase (for example, "English"), then replace it with another word or phrase (for example, "British").

Add a Text Box:

Text can be inserted into both **placeholders** and **text boxes**. A **placeholder** *is* a kind of text box, but is unique because it is part of the **slide layout**, and often contains formatting specific to the slide.

Inserting an extra **text box** allows you to **add** to the slide layout, so you can include as much text as you want.

1. From the **Insert** tab, click the **Text Box** command.



Text Box command

2. Cursor will turn into an upside-down cross \downarrow .

Insert Design	Transitions Animations	Slide Show	Review View
	🗗 着 🥼		
Clip Screenshot Photo Art + Album +	Shapes SmartArt Chart	Hyperlink Action	Text Header WordArt Date Slide Box & Footer * & Time Number
Images	Illustrations	Links	Text
	l		

Text Box cursor

3. Click the area on your slide where you want to add a text box. A text box will appear with an **insertion point** inside.

-	Presentation1 - Micro	soft PowerPoint		Drawing Tools
Insert De	sign Transitions Animatic	ns Slide Show	Review View	Format
Layout *		∧* 🐴 🗄 * 🕯		
ew de 👻 🔚 Section 👻	BI <u>I</u> US abe AV Aa	· 🔺 📕 🗐 🚍		Shapes Arrange Q
Slides	Font	Es.	Paragraph	Gi Dra
A text bo	۵ ۵	a		

Move a Placeholder or Text Box

- 1. Click the box you would like to move.
- 2. Position your mouse on the **border** of the box so it changes to a **cross with arrows** \clubsuit .

Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Moussing over the border of the box

3. Click and hold the mouse button as you **drag** the box to the desired location.



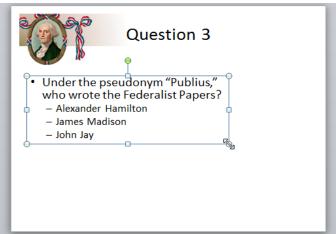
Moving the box

4. Release the mouse button. The box will be moved.

To rotate the box, click and drag on the green circle at the top of the box.

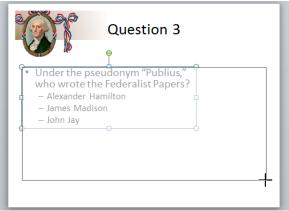
Resize a Placeholder or Text Box:

- 1. Click the box you wish to resize.
- 2. Position your mouse over any one of the **sizing handles** that appear on the corners and sides of the box. The cursor will become a pair of **arrows** ⇐ .



Moussing over the resize handle

3. Click, hold, and **drag** your mouse until the text box is the desired size.



Resizing the box

4. Release the mouse button. The box will be resized.

Formatting Text

Text can be formatted on the slide by changing font size, color, style, and more.

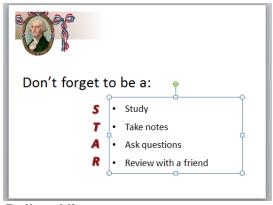
Insert a Bulleted List:

- 1. Select the text box (or specific text) that you want to format as a bulleted list.
- 2. Click the **Bullets** command in the **Paragraph** group on the **Home** tab.



Bullets command

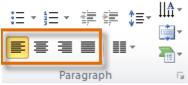
3. A bulleted list will appear.



Bulleted list

Change Horizontal Text Alignment:

- 1. Select the text you wish to modify.
- 2. Select one of the four alignment options in the Paragraph group.
- Align Text Left: Aligns all the selected text to the left margin.
- Center: Aligns text an equal distance from the left and right margins.
- Align Text Right: Aligns all the selected text to the right margin.
- **Justify:** Justified text is equal on both sides and lines up equally to the right and left margins. Many newspapers and magazines use full-justification.



Alignment commands

The alignment commands align the text within the placeholder or text box it is in, not across the slide.

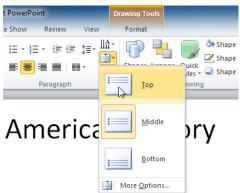
Change Vertical Text Alignment

- 1. Select the text your wish to modify.
- 2. Click the Align Text command in the Paragraph group. A menu will appear.



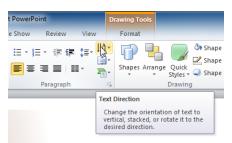
Align Text command

3. Choose to align the text at the **Top**, **Middle**, or **Bottom** of the text box.



Choosing from the Align Text menu Change Text Direction

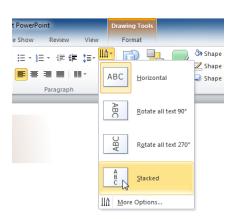
- 1. Select the text your wish to modify.
- 2. Click the Text Direction command in the Paragraph group. A menu will appear.



Text Direction command

3. Choose for the direction of the text to be **Horizontal**, **Rotated**, or **Stacked**.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Choosing from the Text Direction menu

Apply a Theme

A theme is a set of **colors**, **fonts**, **effects**, and more that can be applied to your **entire presentation** to give it a consistent, professional look. The default **Office** theme consists of a white background, the Calibri font, and primarily black text. Themes can be applied or changed at any time.

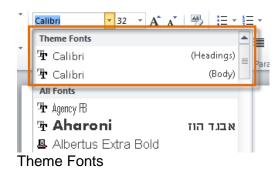
Theme Elements

Every PowerPoint theme, including the default Office theme, has its own **theme elements**. Those elements are:

• Theme Colors (available from every Color menu)



• Theme Fonts (available from the Font menu)

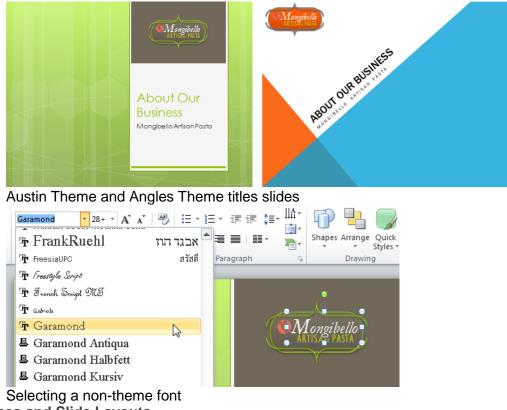


• Shape Styles (available in the Format tab when you click on a shape)



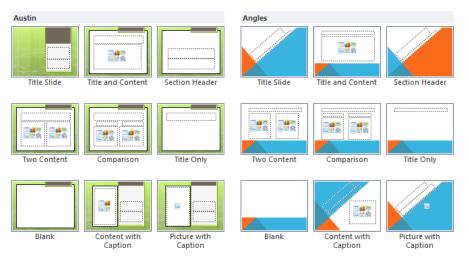
Use of Theme Elements

When a theme is applied all of the colors, formatting will work well together. When you switch to a different theme, **all of those elements will update** to reflect the new theme.



Themes and Slide Layouts

Two different **Title Slides** above, themes also affect the various **slide layouts**.



Austin Theme and Angles Theme slide layouts

If you apply a theme before you start building your presentation, you will be able to arrange your content to fit the layouts you have to choose from. If you apply the theme after, the text boxes and placeholders may move depending on the theme you choose.

Applying Themes

All of the themes that are included in PowerPoint are located in the **Themes** group on the **Design** tab. Themes can be applied or changed at any time.

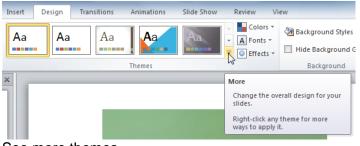
Apply a Theme

- 1. Go to the **Design** tab.
- 2. Locate the **Themes** group. Each image represents a theme.

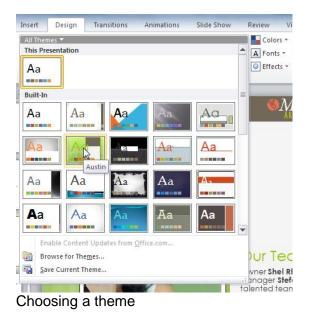


Themes group

3. Click the drop-down arrow to access more themes.



4. Hover over a theme to see a **live preview** of it in the presentation. The name of the theme will appear as you hover over it.



5. Click a theme to apply it to the slides.



Slides with the Austin Theme

Inserting Images

Insert an Image From a File:

- 1. Select the **Insert** tab.
- 2. Click the **Picture** command in the **Images** group. The Insert Picture dialog box appears.

File	Home	Insert	Design	Transition
			1 📰	P
Table			- Dhata	
Table	Picture CI		Ishot Photo Album	Shapes
Tables	3	Images		II
Slides	Insert Pictu	re from Fil	e	• 4 •
1	Insert a n	icture from	a file	
1	misere u p	iccure from	u me.	-

Inserting a picture from a file

3. Select the desired image file and click Insert.



Selecting an image file

4. The picture will appear in your slide.



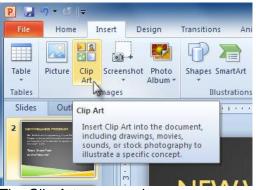
Insert picture result

You can also select the **Insert Picture from File** command in a **placeholder** to insert images.



Inserting a picture from a placeholder Locate Clip Art

- 1. Select the **Insert** tab.
- 2. Click the Clip Art command in the Images group.



The Clip Art command

- 3. The clip art options appear in the **task pane** to the right of the document.
- 4. Enter keywords in the Search for: field that are related to the image you wish to insert.
- 5. Click the drop-down arrow in the **Results should be:** field.
- 6. Deselect any types of media you do not wish to see.

Clip Art	▼ ×
Search for:	
healthy	Go
Results should be:	
Selected media file types	-
 ☐ All media types ☐ Illustrations ☐ Photographs ☐ GVVideos 	
Audio	
Choosing which media types t	o display

7. It will search for clip art on your computer.

Clip Art	▼ X
Search for:	
healthy	Go
Results should be:	
Selected media file types	-
☑ Include Office.com content	

Including Office.com content

8. Click Go.

Insert Clip Art

- 1. Review the results from a clip art search in the **Clip Art** pane.
- 2. Select the desired image.



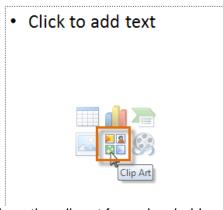
Selecting a Clip Art image

3. The clip art will appear in your slide.

3.010.5.010.1.00.010.1.00.3001	Image: Anti-Anti-Anti-Anti-Anti-Anti-Anti-Anti-	
· · · · · ·		*
Ė		Ŧ
	stad alia ant	

Inserted clip art

You can also select the Insert Clip Art from File command in a placeholder to insert clip art.



Inserting clip art from placeholder

Inserting Screenshots

Screenshots are pictures that capture the visible windows and items displayed on your computer screen. They may include an open window of a website, items on your desktop or an open program, like the PowerPoint images. These images can be useful for explaining or displaying computer programs, functions and websites. PowerPoint allows you to capture an image of an entire window or a **screen clipping** of part of a window.

Insert Screenshots of a Window

- 1. Select the **Insert** tab.
- 2. Click the **Screenshot** command in the **Images** group.
- 3. The **Available Windows** from your desktop will appear. Select the window you would like to capture as a screenshot.
- 4. The screenshot will appear in your slide.



Inserting a screenshot of an available Window

Inserting a Screen Clipping from a Window

- 1. Select the **Insert** tab.
- 2. Click the Screenshot command and select Screen Clipping.



Selecting Screen Clipping

- 3. A faded view of your current desktop will appear and your cursor will turn into a cross shape .
- 4. Click, hold and drag on the area of the window that you want to capture.

Calore Courter - Free Online Ciet Journal - Windows Internet Toplare		× 12 44 X ∰dagt P
bling III III IIII IIII IIII IIIIIIIIIIIII	Let Or State Add-ces *	Click and drag the cross to select the
my-calorie-co	overyday	part of the window you want to capture
Language and Andrews	n Mystanian Collinar? Nutrition Facts Calories Burned	Forums Utilities Conflige Help
	rnal and Calorie Counter citing the calories you eat and the calories you but	ırı.
	Get Started Now	Crispy
11100 000	Gender: @ fenale C liate Height: Sth5in/165.cm *	Over-Fried Chicken 256 Catories
	Weight: 150 bs / 55 kg	A Diffe
	Goal: 130 bs / 59 kg	and the
What is My Calorie Counter?		FREE Weight Loss Tools

Capturing a screen clipping from current Window

5. The screen clipping will appear in your slide.



Screen clipping results Resizing and Moving Images

Resize an Image

1. Click on the image.

- 2. Position your mouse over any one of the corner sizing handles. The cursor will become a pair of directional arrows (
- 3. Click, hold, and **drag** your mouse until the image is the desired size.

	jj4j3j2j1101123141	4
0	WEB TOOLS FOR TRACKING YOUR HEALTH GOALS	
	Click and drag corner handles to resize image	* * *

Resizing an image

4. Release the mouse. The image will be resized.

The side sizing handles change the image's size, but do not keep the same proportions. If you want to keep the image's proportions, always use the corner handles.

Move an Image:

- 1. Click on the image. The cursor will turn into a cross with
- 2. While holding down the mouse button, drag the image

arrows. to the desired location.



Moving an image

3. Release the mouse button. The box will be moved.

To rotate the image, click and drag on the green circle located at the of the image.

6.4 Applying Transitions

You can apply different transitions to some or all of your slides to give your presentation a polished, professional look. There are **three categories** of unique transitions to choose from, all of which can be found on the **Transitions** tab:

• **Subtle** (slight transitions)

	Subtle							
	None	Cut	Fade	Push	Wipe	Split	Reveal	Random Bars
			¢.					
	Shape	Uncover	Cover	Flash				
	Subtle tra	ansitions						
_								
• E)	cciting (str	ong transit	tions)					
• E>	cciting (str	ong transit	tions)					
• E)	Exciting (Str	ong transit	tions)					
• E)		rong transit	tions)					
• E)		rong transit		Clock	I Ripple	Honeycomb	Glitter	Vortex
• E)	Exciting			Clock			Glitter	Vortex
• E)	Exciting			Clock Gallery			Glitter Box	Vortex Zoom
• E)	Exciting Dissolve	Checkerboard	Blinds		Ripple	Honeycomb		

• **Dynamic Content** (strong transitions that affect only the content, such as text or images)

Dynamic Cor	ntent						
Pan	Ferris Wheel	Conveyor	Rotate	Window	Orbit	Fly Through	
Strong tr	ansitions						

Apply a Transition

- 1. Select the **slide** you wish to modify.
- 2. Click the **Transitions** tab.
- 3. Locate the **Transition to This Slide** group. By default, **None** is applied to each slide.

File	Home	Insert	Design	Transitions	Animations	Slide S	how	Review
Preview	None		Cut	Fade	Push	Wipe	* * *	Effect Options •
Preview				Transition to	This Slide			

Transition to This Slide group

- 4. Click the **More** drop-down arrow to display all the transitions.
- 5. Click a **transition** to apply it to the selected slide. This will automatically preview the transition as well.

File	Home	Insert Design	Transitions	Animations	Slide Show	w Review	View		
FD	Subtle	_							Vi
Preview						\$]
Preview	None	Cut	Fade	Push	Wipe	Split	Reveal	Random Bars	
• 1			¢.	*					F
1 Burn	Shape	Uncover	Cover	Flash					
	Exciting								
1				29					
2	Dissolve	Checkerboard	Blinds	Clock	Ripple	Honeycomb	Glitter	Vortex	
2 (2)	WWW/								
	Shred	Switch	Flip	Gallery	Cube	Doors	Box	Zoom	
	Dynamic C	ontent							
3									
	Pan	Ferris Wheel	Conveyor	Rotate	Window	Orbit	Fly Through		
Choo	sıng a	transition							

When working with transitions, the **Apply ToAll** command in the **Timing** group can be used at any time to make your presentation uniform. It applies the **sametransition** to every slide; it also applies the settings in the **Timing** group, which you may not want to be the same throughout your presentation.

Preview a Transition

You can **preview** the transition for a selected slide at any time, using either of these two methods:

• Click the **Preview** command on the **Transitions** tab.

P 🛃	9-61-	A
File	Home Insert Design	Transitions
Preview	Shred Switch	Flip
Preview	1-1	Transition to T
	Transitions	

• Click the star **Play Animations** icon. The icon appears on the **Slides** tab in the **left pane** beside any slide that includes a transition.

Modifying a Transition

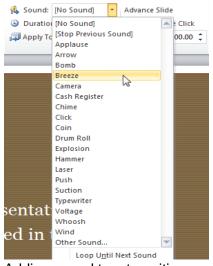
Modify the Duration

- 1. Select the slide that includes the **transition** you wish to modify.
- 2. In the **Duration** field in the **Timing** group, enter the amount of time you want the transition to take.

强 Sound: [No S	ound]	Ŧ	Adv	ance Sl	lide		
Ouration:	02.00	-		On Mo	ouse Click		
🗐 Apply To All				After:	00:00.00	÷	
Timing							
Duration							
Specify the length of a transition.							

Modifying the duration of a transition Add Sound

- 1. Select the slide that includes the transition you wish to modify.
- 2. Click the **Sound** drop-down menu in the **Timing** group.
- 3. You will hear the sound and see a live preview of the transition as you hover over each sound.



Adding sound to a transition

4. Click a **sound** to apply it to the selected slide.

Remove a Transition:

- 1. Select the **slide** you wish to modify.
- 2. Choose None from the gallery in the Transition to This Slide group.

None	Cut	Fade	Push	Wipe	←
		Transition to	This Slide		

Removing a transition

3. Repeat this process for each slide you want to modify.

To remove transitions from **all slides**, select a slide that uses **None**, and click the **Apply to All** command.

Advancing Slides

Advance Slides Automatically

Using the **Advance Slides** settings in the **Timing** group, you can set your presentation to advance on its own and display each slide for a specific amount of time. This is useful for unattended presentations.

- 1. Select the slide you wish to modify.
- 2. Locate the **Timing** group on the **Transitions** tab.
- 3. Under Advance Slide, uncheck the box next to On Mouse Click.

In the After field, enter the amount of time you want to display the slide.

Sound: [No	Sound]	-	Advance Slide				
Ouration:	01.20	÷	On Mouse Click				
🗐 Apply To All			M After: 01:30.00				
Timing							
	After						
	Move to the next slide after a certain number of seconds.						

Advancing the slide automatically

4. Select another slide and repeat the process until all the desired slides have the appropriate timing.

6.5 Presenting Slide Show

Start Slide Show

- 1. Select the **Slide Show** tab.
- 2. Click the **From Beginning** command in the **Start Slide Show** group to start the slide show with the first slide.



Starting Slide Show

You can also start the slide show from the slide you prefer by selecting theslide and clicking on **From Current Slide** from the Start Slide Show group.

Another option for starting the slide show is to select **Slide Show** view at the bottom of the window.



Starting Slide Show view option Advance and Reverse Slides

- 1. Hover your mouse over the bottom right of the screen. A menu will appear.
- 2. Click on the **right arrow** to advance slides or click on the **left arrow** to reverse slides.



Advance or reverse slides

You may also use the arrow keys on your keyboard to advance and reverse slides.

Stop or End Slide Show

To end slide show, hover and select the **menu box options** command and click **End Show**. You can also press the **"Esc"** key at the top left of your keyboard to end show.



Ending slide show Presentation Tools and Features

PowerPoint provides convenient tools and features that you can use while presenting the slide show. Features include changing your mouse pointer to a pen or highlighter to draw attention to items in your slides.

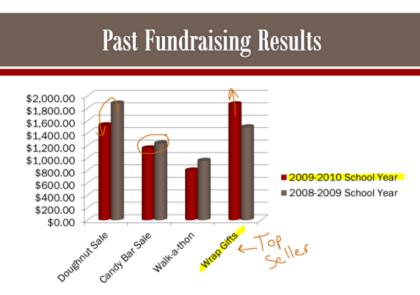
Access the Pen or Highlighter

- 1. Hover and click on the **pen menu option** in the bottom left of your screen.
- 2. Select **Pen** or **Highlighter** based on your preference.



Accessing Pen or Highlighter

3. Use the pointer to draw on or mark your slides.



Using the pen and highlighter on a slide

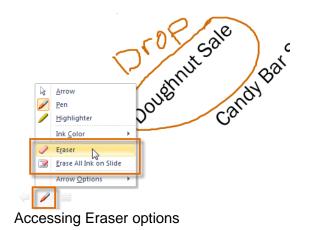
From the same menu, you can also **change the color** of the pen or highlighter.





1. Hover and click on the **pen menu option** in the bottom left of your screen.

2. Select **Eraser** to erase individual ink markings or select **Erase All Ink on Slide** to erase all markings.

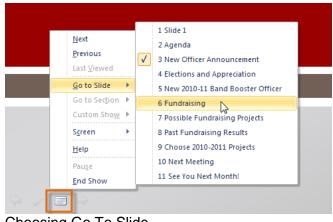


When you end your slide show, you also have the option to **Keep** or **Discard** (erase) any ink markings you made during your presentation.



Choosing to keep or Discard ink markings Jump to a Non-Adjacent Slide

- 1. Hover and click on the menu box option in the bottom left of your screen.
- 2. Select Go to Slide and choose the slide you would like to jump to in your presentation.

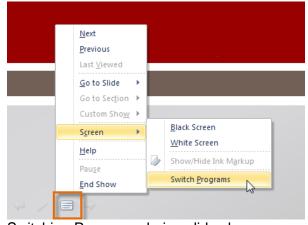


Choosing Go To Slide

Access the Desktop

PowerPoint allows you to access your desktop task bar without ending your presentation.

- 1. Hover and click on the **menu box option** in the bottom left of your screen.
- 2. Select Screen and then click on Switch Programs.



Switching Programs during slide show

3. Your computer's task bar will appear. Choose a program you would like to switch to.



Accessing other programs during your slide show

Menu Access Options

You can also access any of the menu items by **right-clicking** anywhere on the screen during the slide show.

C3	<u>N</u> ext <u>P</u> revious Last <u>V</u> iewed	
	<u>G</u> o to Slide	•
	Go to Section	Þ
	Custom Sho <u>w</u>	Þ
	S <u>c</u> reen	•
	Pointer Options	•
	Help	
	Pau <u>s</u> e	
	End Show	

Right-clicking to access slide show menu options

Keyboard Shortcuts

- Switch between the pen pointer and mouse pointer by pressing "Ctrl + P" (pen) or "Ctrl + M" (mouse) on the keyboard.
- Press "E" on the keyboard to erase any ink markings while using the pen or highlighter.

Slide Show Set Up Options

PowerPoint has various options for setting up and playing a slide show.

Access Slide Show Set Up Options:

Select the Slide Show tab.

1. Click the Set Up Show command.



Setting up slide show

2. The Set Up Show dialog box will appear.

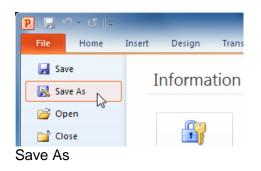
3. Click **OK** to apply the settings to the slide show.

6.6 Saving and Printing

Use the Save As Command

Save As allows you to choose a name and location for your presentation. It's useful if you've first created a presentation or if you want to save a different version of a presentation while keeping the original.

- 1. Click the **File** tab.
- 2. Select Save As.



- 3. The **Save As** dialog box will appear. Select the location where you wish to save the presentation.
- 4. Enter a name for the presentation and click **Save**.

P Save As	×
Q ↓ Libraries ↓ Documents ↓ My Documents ↓ - 4y Search My Documents ↓	nents 🔎
Organize 🔻 New folder	ii • 🕡
Microsoft PowerPc Documents library My Documents	y: Folder 🔻
 ★ Favorites ➡ Desktop ➡ Downloads ➡ Recent Places ➡ Wellness Program 	
Documents	,
File name: bandboosters_july2010	•
Save as type: PowerPoint Presentation	•
Authors: Add an author Tags: Add a tag	
Hide Folders	Cancel

The Save As dialog box

.Use the Save Command:

1. Click the Save command on the Quick Access Toolbar.



2. The presentation will be saved in its current location with the same file name.

If you are saving for the first time and select Save, the Save As dialog box will appear.

AutoRecover

PowerPoint automatically saves your presentation to a temporary folder while you're working on them. If you forget to save your changes, or if PowerPoint crashes, you can recover the autosaved file.

- 1. Open a presentation that was previously closed without saving.
- 2. In Backstage view, click Info.
- 3. If there are autosaved versions of your file, they will appear under **Versions**. Click on the file to open it.



- bandboosters_july2010.ppt: 12/6/2010 9:52 AM (Unsaved File) [Read-Only] Microsoft P | 🚽 Transitions Animations Slide Show Review View File Insert Design Home -Шâ P E→E→ 筆筆 ≛→ • A A 🔺 1 Paste New S abe AV - Aa - A -Shape BIU 3 Slide * Clipboard 🛛 🗔 Slides Font Paragraph 1 **Recovered Unsaved File** This is a recovered file that is temporarily stored on your computer. Restore ×
- 4. To save changes, click **Restore** and then click **OK**.

Restoring a file

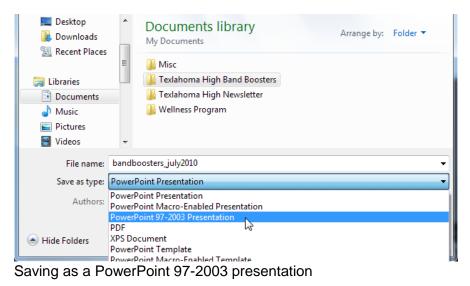
By default, PowerPoint autosaves every 10 minutes. If you are editing a presentation for less than 10 minutes, PowerPoint may not create an autosaved version.

Other File Formats

To Save As PowerPoint 97 - 2003 Presentation

You can share your presentation with anyone using PowerPoint 2010 or 2007, since they use the same file format. However, earlier versions of PowerPoint use a different file format, so if you want to share your presentation with someone using an earlier version of PowerPoint, you'll need to save it as a PowerPoint 97-2003 presentation.

- 1. Click the File tab.
- Select Save As.
- In the Save as type drop-down menu, select PowerPoint 97-2003 Presentation.



- 4. Select the location you wish to save the presentation.
- 5. Enter a name for the presentation and click **Save**.

To Save as a Different File Type

If you would like to share your presentation with someone who does not have PowerPoint, you have several different file types to choose from.

- 1. Click the **File** tab.
- 2. Select Save & Send.
- 3. Choose from three special File Types.
- **Create PDF/XPS Document:** Saves the contents of your slide show as a document instead of a PowerPoint file.
- Create a Video: Saves your presentation as a video that can be shared online, in an email, or on a disc.
- Package Presentation for CD: Saves your presentation in a folder along with the Microsoft PowerPoint Viewer, a special slide show player that anyone can download and use.

	File	Гурез
Print	5	Change File Type
Save & Send		Create PDF/XPS Document
Help	8	Create a Video
Dptions	0	Package Presentation for CD
🔀 Exit	•	Create Handouts

Selecting a different file type

Printing

In PowerPoint 2010 Print Preview has been combined with the **Print** window to create the **Print pane**, which is located in Backstage view.

View the Print Pane:

- 1. Click the **File** tab to go to **Backstage view**.
- 2. Select **Print**. The Print pane appears, with the print settings on the left and the **Preview** on the right.

Print

- 1. Go to the **Print** pane.
- 2. Determine and choose how you want the slides to appear on the page.
- 3. If you only want to print certain pages, you can type a **range** of pages. Otherwise, select **Print All Pages**.
- 4. Select the number of copies.
- 5. Check the **Collate** box if you are printing multiple copies of a multi-page document.
- 6. Select a **printer** from the drop-down list.
- 7. Click the **Print** button.

Quick Print

This feature prints the document using the default settings and the default printer. In PowerPoint 2010, you'll need to add it to the Quick Access Toolbar in order to use it. Quick Print always prints the **entire presentation**

Access the Quick Print Button

- 1. Click the drop-down arrow on the right side of the Quick Access Toolbar.
- 2. Select **Quick Print** if it is not already checked.

P 🔒 🤊 - 👩	-	_	
File Home	Cu	stomize Quick Access Toolbar	Animati
	-	New	
		Open	A
Paste N		Save	abe 🗛 🥻 Aa
Clipboard 5		E-mail	ont
Slides Outlin		Quick Print	4 + + + + +
1		Print Preview Add to Quick Acc	ess Toolbar
1		Spelling	
	\checkmark	Undo	
Sectadorement III. Newlor St	\checkmark	Redo	
Les lagra (Slide Show From Beginning	
		Open Recent File	
2 Agent		More Commands	
2016an Officiality - Evolution and Participan - Evolution Officer - Stanland Officer Server Ma		Show Below the Ribbon	
A Design New York	_		

Adding Quick Print to the Quick Access Toolbar

3. To print, just click the **Quick Print** command.

P 🖯 🔊 -	(🕄 🔁			
	ome Quick Print (HP	Color La	serJet :	, 2600n)
	Layout *			Ŧ
Paste 🗸	New Slide - Section -	B 2	<u>u</u>	S abe {
Clipboard 🕞	Slides			Font
The Ouick	Print comman	Ч		

The Quick Print command

6.7 WordArt and Shapes

Creating WordArt

PowerPoint allows you to add effects to the text inside of a text box, which is known as **WordArt**. With WordArt, you can transform the text to give it a wavy, slanted, or inflated look. Apply a WordArt Style to Text

A WordArt Style will automatically apply several effects to your text at once. You can then refine the look of your text by adding or modifying text effects.

1. Select the text box, or select some text inside of the text box. The Format tab will appear.

- 2. Click the Format tab.
- 3. In the **WordArt Styles** group, click the **More** drop-down arrow to view all of the available styles.
- 4. Select the desired style preset to apply the style to your text.

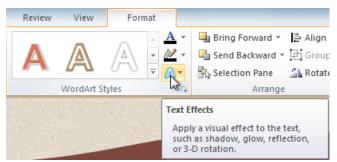


Selecting a WordArt Style

After you have applied a WordArt Style, you can still modify the **font** or **font color** from the **Home** tab if desired.

Add or Modify Text Effects

- 1. Select the text box, or select some text inside of the text box. The **Format** tab will appear.
- 2. Click the Format tab.
- 3. Click the **Text Effects** command in the **WordArt Styles** group. A drop-down menu will appear showing the different **effect categories**.



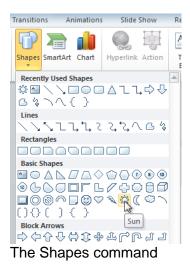
The Text Effects command

4. Hover over an effect category. A drop-down menu will appear. You can hover the mouse over the different presets to see a live preview.

Insert a Shape

1. Select the **Insert** tab.

2. Click the **Shapes** command.



- 3. Select a shape from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Click and drag the mouse until the shape is the desired size.

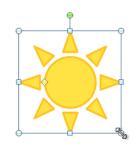


Creating a new shape

5. Release the mouse button.

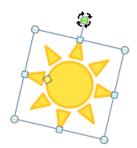
Resize a Shape or Text Box:

- 1. Click on the shape to select it.
- 2. Click and drag one of the **sizing handles** on the corners and sides of the text box until it is the desired size.



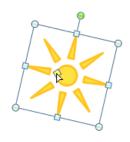
Resizing the shape

3. To rotate the shape, drag the green handle.



Rotating the shape

4. Some shapes also have one or more **yellow handles** that can be used to modify the shape. For example, with star shapes, you can adjust the length of the points.

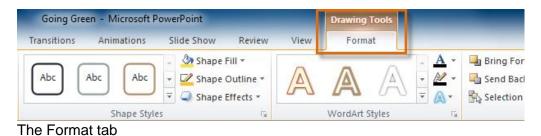


Modifying the shape

If you drag the **sizing handles** on any of the four corners, you will be able to change the **height** and **width** at the same time. The sizing handles on the top or bottom of the shape will only allow you to resize **vertically**, while the handles on the left and right sides will resize the shape **horizontally**.

Change to a Different Shape

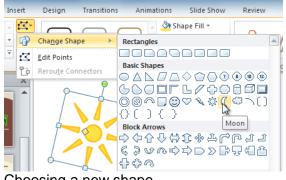
1. Select the shape or text box. The Format tab will appear.



2. From the Format tab, click the Edit Shape command.



3. Click Change Shape to display a drop-down list.



- Choosing a new shape
- 4. Select the desired shape from the list.



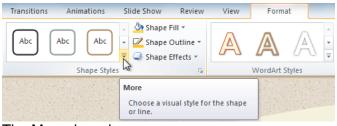
Change the Shape Style

1. Select the shape or text box. The **Format** tab will appear.



The Format tab

2. Click the More drop-down arrow in the Shape Styles group to display more style options.



The More drop-down arrow

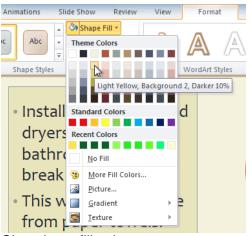
3. Move your cursor over the styles to see a live preview of the style in the slide.



4. Select the desired style.

Change the Shape Fill Color

- 1. Select the shape or text box. The **Format** tab appears.
- 2. Select the Format tab.
- 3. Click the Shape Fill command to display a drop-down list.



Choosing a fill color

4. Select the desired **color** from the list, choose **No Fill**, or choose **More Fill Colors** to choose a custom color.

Change the Shape Outline

- 1. Select the shape or text box. The **Format** tab will appear.
- 2. Click the **Format** tab.
- 3. Click the **Shape Outline** command to display a drop-down menu.

Animations Sli	de Show Review V	/iew Format
Abc +	Shape Fill *	WordArt Styles
Install dryers bathro	Indigo, Text 1, Lighter Stahmarg Colors Recent Colors	d
break • This w		→ e
from p	Da <u>s</u> hes	•

Choosing an outline color

4. From the drop-down menu, you can change the outline **color**, **weight** (thickness), and whether or not it is a **dashed** line.



A thicker outline

Change Shadow Effects

- 1. Select the shape or text box. The **Format** tab will appear.
- 2. Click the Format tab.
- 3. Click the **Shape Effects** command. A drop-down menu will appear.
- 4. Hover the mouse over **Shadow**. You will see a list of shadow presets.
- 5. Move your mouse over the menu options to see a live preview of the shadow effect in the slide.

A	nimations	Slide Show	Review		View	Format	t	
.bc	Abc	 → Shape F → □ Shape C → □ Shape E 	Dutline -	4	A	A	A	▲ ▼ & ▼ ▲
	Shape Styles	Pre	eset	F	V	VordArt St	yles	
	Swit		adow	۲	No Shad	low		
			flection	F	Outer	J		
	• Insta		w	ŀ			C	
	drye		ft <u>E</u> dges	ŀ				
	bath brea	De	vel	×				
	• This		Rotation	•	Inner		L	3
С	hoosin	ig a sha	adow	t١				

6. Click the desired shadow effect to add it to your shape.

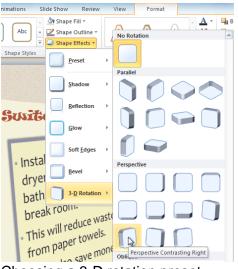
You can select **Shadow Options** from the drop-down menu and click the **Color** button to select a different shadow color for your shape.

3-D Effects

There are two kinds of effects that you can apply to your shapes and text boxes to give them a 3-D appearance: **3-D Rotation** and **Bevel**. **3-D Rotation** gives the appearance that you are viewing the object from a different angle, and it can be applied to any shape. **Bevel** adds thickness and a rounded edge to shapes, but it doesn't work with every type of shape.

Use 3-D Rotation

- 1. Select the shape or text box.
- 2. Click on the **Format** tab.
- 3. Click Shape Effects from the Shape Styles group.
- 4. Hover the mouse over 3-D Rotation. A drop-down menu will appear.
- 5. Select the desired **rotation preset** from the drop-down menu. You can also click **3-D Rotation Options** if you would prefer to type in custom values.



Choosing a 3-D rotation preset

Use Bevel

- 1. Select the shape or text box.
- 2. Click on the **Format** tab.
- 3. Click Shape Effects from the Shape Styles group.
- 4. Hover the mouse over **Bevel**. A drop-down menu will appear.

Abc Shape Outline A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	nimations S	lide Show Review	View	Forma	t		
Susits Preset Shadow Beflection Instal dryet bath Soft Edges Bevel Bevel Bevel Bevel Bevel Content Berlection Bevel Bevel Content Berlection Bevel Content Berlection Bevel Content Berlection Bevel Content Berlection Bevel Content Bevel Content Bevel Content Bevel Content Bevel Content Bevel Content Content Bevel Content		Shape Outline 🔻	A	A	A	∧ <u>A</u> * * <u>≥</u> * ▼ <u>∧</u> *	🖷 В С S
over the lot b	Shape Styles SUSTE Insta drye bath brea This frol	Preset Shadow Beflection Glow Soft Edges Bevel 3-0 Rotation	Bevel				-

Choosing a bevel preset

5. Select the desired **bevel preset** from the drop-down menu. You can also click **3-D Options** if you would prefer to type in custom values.

If you click on **3-D Options**, you'll also be able to change the shape's material to give it a metal, plastic, or translucent appearance, and you can choose the lighting type to change how the shape is illuminated.

Fill	3-D For	mat			
Line Color	Bevel				
Line Style	Top:		Width:	0 pt 🚔	
Shadow			Height:	0 pt 🚖	
Reflection	Bottom:	-	Wi <u>d</u> th:	0 pt 🍦	
Glow and Soft Edges			Height:	0 pt 🌲	
3-D Format	Depth				
3-D Rotation	<u>C</u> olor:		Depth:	0 pt 🍦	
Picture Corrections	Contour -				
Picture Color	Color:	<u></u>	Size:	0 pt 🗦	
Artistic Effects	Surface				
Crop	Material:		Lighting:		
Size	<u>-</u> atenan	-	Educid		
Position			<u>A</u> ngle:	0° 🚖	
Text Box	<u>R</u> eset				
Alt Text					

Viewing the 3-D Options

Arranging Objects

Aligning Objects

You can **click** and **drag objects** to align them manually. PowerPoint provides you with several commands that allow you to **easily arrange** and position objects

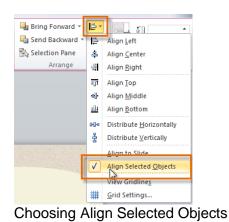
Align Two or More Objects

1. Click and drag your mouse to form a **selection box** around the objects you want to align. All of the objects will now have **sizing handles** to show that they are selected.

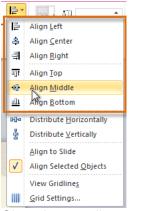


Selecting multiple objects

2. From the Format tab, click the Align command and select Align Selected Objects.

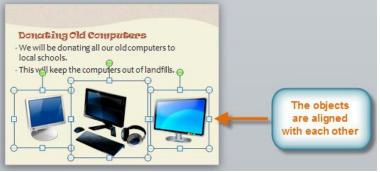


3. Click the Align command again and select one of the six alignment options.



Choosing an alignment option

4. The objects will align to each other based on the option that you have selected.

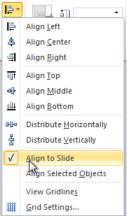


The aligned objects Align Objects to the Slide:

To align one or more objects to a **specific location within the slide**, such as the top or bottom. You can do by selecting the **Align to Slide** option before you align the objects.

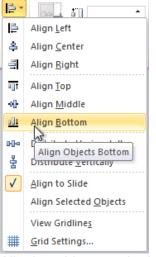
1. Click and drag your mouse to form a **selection box** around the objects you want to align. All of the objects will now have **sizing handles** to show that they are selected.

2. From the Format tab, click the Align command and select Align to Slide.



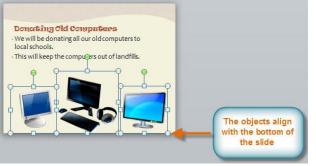
Selecting Align to Slide

3. Click the Align command again and select one of the six alignment options.



Aligning objects to the bottom of the slide

4. The objects will align to the slide based on the option that you have selected.



The aligned objects

Distribute Objects Evenly

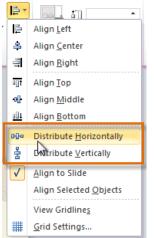
You can arrange objects by distributing the objects horizontally or vertically.

1. Click and drag your mouse to form a **selection box** around the objects you want to align. All of the objects will now have **sizing handles** to show that they are selected.



Selecting multiple objects

- 2. From the **Format** tab, click the **Align** command.
- 3. From the menu, select Distribute Horizontally or Distribute Vertically.



Choosing a distribute option

4. The objects will be distributed evenly.

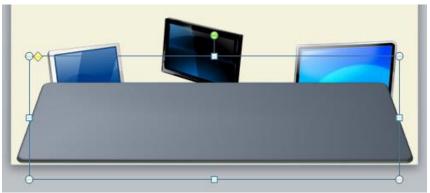


Objects distributed evenly Ordering and Rotating Objects

In addition to aligning and grouping objects, PowerPoint gives you the ability to **arrange objects** in a **specific order**.

Change the Ordering by One Level

1. Select an object. The Format tab will appear.



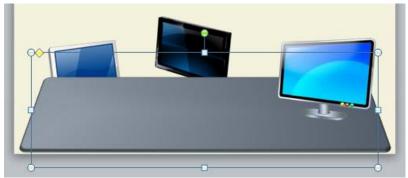
The selected object

2. From the **Format** tab, click the **Bring Forward** or **Send Backward** command to change the object's ordering by **one level**. If the object overlaps with more than one other object, you may need to click the command **several times** to achieve the desired ordering.



Sending an object backward

3. The objects will reorder themselves.



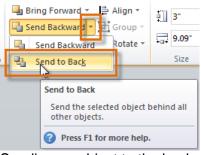
The reordered objects

Bring an Object to the Front or Back:

If you want to move an object behind or in front of several objects..

- 1. Select an object. The Format tab will appear.
- 2. From the Format tab, click the Bring Forward or Send Backward drop-down box.

3. From the drop-down menu, select Bring to Front or Send to Back.



Sending an object to the back

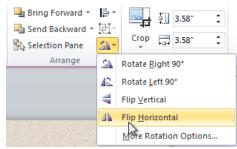
4. The objects will reorder themselves.



The reordered objects

Rotate an Object

- 1. Select an object. The Format tab will appear.
- 2. From the Format tab, click the Rotate command. A drop-down menu will appear.
- 3. Select the desired rotation option.



Selecting a rotation option

4. The object in the slide will rotate.



The rotated image Grouping Objects

Pictures, shapes, clip art and text boxes can all be grouped together, but **placeholders** cannot be grouped.

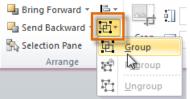
Group Objects:

1. Click and drag your mouse to form a **selection box** around the objects you want to align. All of the objects will now have **sizing handles** to show that they are selected.



Selecting multiple objects

2. From the Format tab, click the Group command and select Group.



Grouping objects

3. The selected objects will now be grouped. There will be a **single box with sizing handles** around the entire group to show that they are one object.



The grouped objects

If you select the objects and the **Group** command is disabled, it may be because one of the objects is inside a **placeholder**. If this happens, try **reinserting** the images or **cutting** and **pasting** them into the same slide outside of any placeholders.

Ungroup Objects

- 1. Select the grouped object that you wish to ungroup.
- 2. From the Format tab, click the Group command and select Ungroup.



Ungrouping objects

3. The objects will be ungrouped.



The ungrouped objects

6.8 Animating Text and Objects

Four Types of Animations

There are many different animation effects that you can choose from, and they are organized into four types:

• Entrance: These control how the object enters the slide. For example, with the Bounce animation, the object will "fall" onto the slide and then bounce several times.



• Emphasis: These animations occur while the object is on the slide, often triggered by a mouse click. For example, you can set an object to Spin when you click the mouse.



• Exit: These control how the object exits the slide. For example, with the Fade animation, the object will simply fade away.

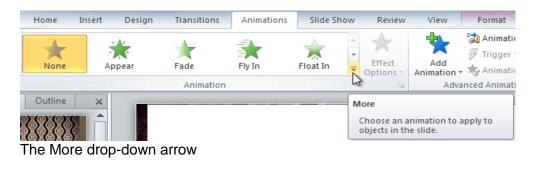


• Motion Paths: These are similar to Emphasis effects, except the object moves within the slide along a pre-determined path, for example a circle.

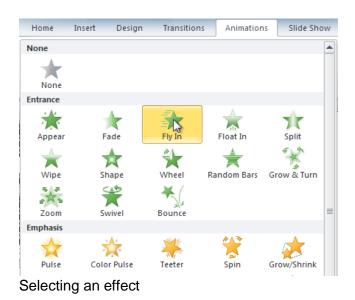


Apply an Animation to an Object

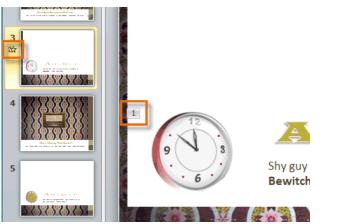
- 1. Select an object.
- 2. Click the Animations tab.
- 3. In the **Animation** group, click the **More** drop-down arrow to view the available animations.



4. Select the desired animation effect.

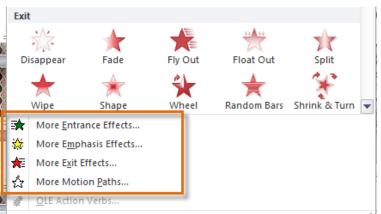


5. The object will now have a small **number** next to it to show that it has an animation. Also, in the Slide pane, the slide will now have a **star** symbol next to it.



The number and the star indicate that an effect has been added

At the bottom of the menu, you can access more effects.



More animation effects

Effect Options

Some effects will have **options** that you can change. For example, with the **Fly In** effect, you can control **which direction** the object comes from. These options can be accessed from the **Effect Options** command in the Animation group.

IS	Animations	Slide She	w	Review	v View For
	Fly In	Float In	4 * *	Effect Options *	Ar Add Animation - 🍫 Ar
on			_	Direction	1
			-		From <u>B</u> ottom
					From Bottom-L <u>e</u> ft
					From <u>L</u> eft
					From Top-Le <u>f</u> t

Viewing the options for the Fly In effect Working with Animations Multiple Animations to an Object:

If you select a new animation from the menu in the Animation group, it will **replace the object's current animation**.Sometimes if want to place **more than one animation** on an object, for example an **Entrance** and an **Exit** effect. To do this, you'll need to use the **Add Animation** command, which will allow you to keep your current animations while adding new ones.

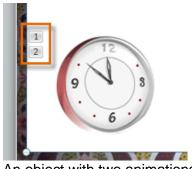
- 1. Select the object.
- 2. Click the **Animations** tab.
- 3. In the **Advanced Animation** group, click the **Add Animation** command to view the available animations.

Select the **desired** animation effect.

w	View	Format			
•	Zoom	Animation Pane Trigger + Animation Painter	Ourati	00.00	 Reorder Animat Move Earlie Move Later
	Emphasis Pul Pulse Desaturate	Color Pulse Darken Line Color	Teeter Lighten Fill Color	Spin Transparency	Grow/Shrink Cobject Color Font Color

Adding an additional animation

4. If the object has more than one effect, it will have a different **number** for each effect. The numbers indicate the **order** in which the effects will occur.

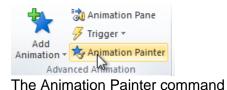


An object with two animations

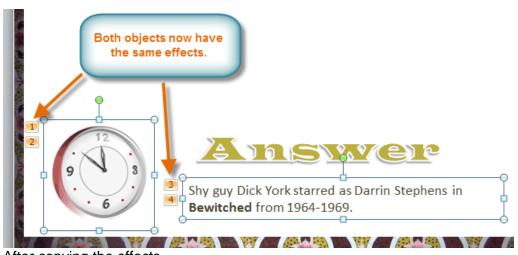
Copy Animations with the Animation Painter

In some cases, you may want to apply the same effects to more than one object. You can do that by **copying** the effects from one object to another using the **Animation Painter**.

- 1. Click on the object that has the effects that you want to copy.
- 2. From the Animations tab, click the Animation Painter command.



3. Click on the object that you want to copy the effects to. The effects will be applied to the object.



After copying the effects

Reorder the Animations:

1. Select the **number** of the effect that you want to change.



2. From the **Animations** tab, click the **Move Earlier** or **Move Later** commands to change the ordering.



Moving the effect later

Preview Animations:

Any animation effects that you have applied will show up when you play the slide show. However, you can also quickly **preview** the animations for the current slide without viewing the slide show.

1. Navigate to the **slide** that you want to preview.

2. From the **Animations** tab, click the **Preview** command. The animations for the current slide will play.



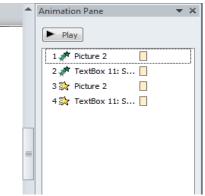
Previewing the animations The Animation Pane

The **Animation Pane** allows you to view and manage all of the effects that are on the current slide. You can **modify** and **reorder** effects directly from the Animation Pane, which is especially useful when you have a large number of effects.

1. From the Animations tab, click the Animation Pane command.



2. The Animation Pane will open on the right side of the window. It will show all of the effects for the current slide in the order that they will appear.



The Animation Pane

Reorder Effects from the Animation Pane:

1. On the Animation Pane, click and drag an effect up or down.

Animation Pane	▼ ×
► Play	
1 🎢 Picture 2	
2 💉 TextBox 11: S	-
3 💸 Picture 2	
4 💸 TextBox 11: S	

Dragging an effect to change the order

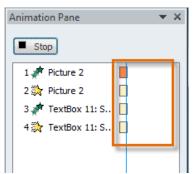
2. The effects will reorder themselves.

Preview Effects from the Animation Pane:

1. From the Animation Pane, click the Play button.

Play 1 Picture 2 2 Picture 2 3 TextBox 11: S 4 TextBox 11: S	Animatio	on Pane	•	x
2 🔂 Picture 2	► Pla	У		
3 💉 TextBox 11: S	1 🥂	Picture 2		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	2 💸	Picture 2		
4 💸 TextBox 11: S	3 🥢	TextBox 11: S		
	4 💸	TextBox 11: S		
The Play button		lov hutton		

2. The effects for the current slide will play. On the right side of the Animation Pane, you will be able to see a **timeline** that shows the progress through each effect.



The timeline shows which effect is playing

If the timeline is not visible, click the drop-down arrow for an effect and select **Show Advanced Timeline**.

Change an Effect's Start Option:

By default, an effect starts playing when you click the mouse during a slide show. If you have multiple effects, you will need to click multiple times to start each effect individually. However, by changing the **start option** for each effect, you can have effects that automatically play **at the same time** or **one after the other**.

1. From the **Animation Pane**, select an effect. A drop-down arrow will appear next to the effect.

Animation Pane	▼ X
► Play	
1 🎢 Picture 2	
2 💸 Picture 2	
3 💉 TextBox 11: S.	
4 💸 TextBox 11: S.	

The drop-down arrow for an effect

- 2. Click the drop-down arrow. You will see three start options:
 - Start on Click: This will start the effect when the mouse is clicked.
 - **Start With Previous:** This will start the effect at the same time as the previous effect.
 - Start After Previous: This will start the effect when the previous effect ends.
- 3. Select the desired start option.

When you **preview** the animations, all of the effects will play through automatically. To test effects that are set to **Start on Click**, you will need to play the slide show.

Effect Options Dialog Box

From the Animation Pane, you can access the **Effect Options** dialog box, which contains more advanced options that you can use to fine-tune your animations.

- 1. From the **Animation Pane**, select an effect. A drop-down arrow will appear next to the effect.
- 2. Click the drop-down arrow and select **Effect Options**. The Effect Options dialog box will appear.
- 3. From here, you can add various enhancements to the effect:
 - **Sound:** Adds a sound effect to the animation.
 - After animation: Changes the color or hides the object after the animation is over.
 - Animate text: If you are animating text, you can choose to animate it all at once, one word at a time, or one letter at a time.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

Fly In		? X		
Effect Timing Text Animation				
Settings				
Direction:	From Bottom	-		
Smooth start:	0 sec	-		
Smooth end: 0 sec				
Bounce end: 0 sec				
Enhancements				
Sound: Drum Roll				
After animation:				
Animate text:	By word	•		
10 % <u>d</u> elay between words				
	OK	Cancel		

The Effect Options dialog box

Some effects have **additional options** that you can change. These will vary depending on which effect you have selected.

Change the Effect Timing:

1. From the Effect Options dialog box, select the Timing tab.

Fly In	? ×
Effect	ning Text Animation
<u>S</u> tart:	On Click
Delay:	0 seconds
Duration:	0.5 seconds (Very Fast)
Repeat:	(none)
Re <u>w</u> ind	when done playing
Triggers	F
	OK Cancel

Selecting the Timing tab

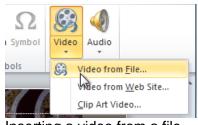
2. From here, you can add a **delay** before the effect starts, change the **duration** of the effect, and control whether or not the effect **repeats**.

Fly In
Effect Timing Text Animation
Start: 🖓 On Click
Delay: 2.5 * seconds Duration: 3 seconds (Slow) • Repeat: 3 • Rewind when done playing • Iriggers •
OK Cancel

Changing the timing options

Inserting Videos

1. From the Insert tab, click the Video drop-down arrow and select Video from File.



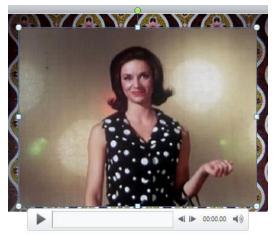
Inserting a video from a file

2. Locate and select the desired video file and then click Insert.



The Insert Video dialog box

3. The video will be added to the slide.



The inserted video

Preview the Video:

- 1. Make sure the video is selected.
- 2. Click the **Play/Pause** button below the video. The video will start playing, and the **timeline** next to the Play/Pause button will begin to advance.



The Play/Pause button and the timeline

3. To jump to a different part of the video, click anywhere on the **timeline**.



Clicking on the timeline

If you are using an embedded video from a web site, you may need to click the **Play** button in the **Playback** tab in order to view the video's playback controls (the Play button is also located on the Format tab).

Resize the Video:

- 1. Select the video. A box with resizing handles will appear around the video.
- 2. Click and drag any of the handles to resize the movie.



Resizing the video Edit and Format Video

The **Playback** tab has several options that you can use to edit your video. For example, you can **trim** your video so that it will only play an excerpt, add a **fade in** and **fade out**, and add **bookmarks** that allow you to jump to specific points in the video.

Most of the features on the Playback tab can only be used with videos that are inserted from a file. They will not work with embedded videos.

Trim the Video:

1. From the **Playback** tab, click the **Trim Video** command. The Trim Video dialog box will appear.

sert	Design	Transitions	Animati
k		Fade Duration	aa aa 🔺
ove	13	🗑 Fade In:	00.00 ‡
mark	Video	Fade Out:	\$ 00.00
Editing			
The Trim Video command			

2. Use the green and red handles to set the start time and end time.



Moving the green and red handles

3. To preview the video file, click the **Play** button.

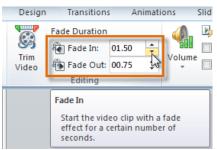


Previewing the video

4. Adjust the green and red handles again if necessary, and then click **OK**.

Add a Fade In and Fade Out:

- 1. On the Playback tab, locate the Fade In and Fade Out fields.
- 2. Type in the desired values, or use the up and down arrows to adjust the times.



Adjusting the Fade In Add a Bookmark:

1. Click the **Play/Pause** button to play the video, and when you have located the part that you want to bookmark, **pause** it. You can also click the **timeline** to locate the desired part of the video.



Locating the desired part of the video

2. From the **Playback** tab, click **Add Bookmark**.



3. A small circle will appear on the timeline to indicate the bookmark.



The new bookmark

4. You can now click the bookmark to jump to that location.

Remove a Bookmark:

- 1. Select the bookmark.
- 2. From the Playback tab, click Remove Bookmark. The bookmark will disappear.



Video Options

There are other options that you can set to control how your video plays, and these are found in the **Video Options** group on the **Playback** tab.

ions	Slide Show	Review	View	Format	Playback				
Volume	🧦 Start:	On Click	•	Loop until Stopped					
		ull Screen							
	Hide While Not Playing								
Video Options									
The Midee Options group									

The Video Options group

- Volume: Changes the audio volume in the video.
- Start: Controls whether the video file starts automatically or when the mouse is clicked.
- Play Full Screen: Lets the video fill the entire screen while it is playing.
- Hide While Not Playing: Hides the video when it is not playing.
- Loop until Stopped: Causes the video to repeat until it is stopped.

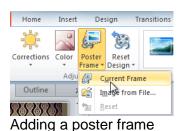
• **Rewind after Playing:** Causes the video to return to the beginning when it is finished playing.

Formatting the Appearance of the Video

Much like **pictures**, PowerPoint allows you to **format the appearance** of the video by applying a **video style**, adding a **border**, changing the **shape**, applying **effects** such as 3-D rotation, making image **corrections**, and adjusting the **color**. You can also add a **poster frame**, which is the **placeholder image** that your audience will see before the video starts playing. The poster frame is often just a **frame** taken from the video itself, but you can also use a different image if you prefer.

Create a Poster Frame:

- 1. Select the video.
- 2. Start playing the video. When you see the frame that you want to use, click the **Play/Pause** button to pause it.
- 3. From the Format tab, click the Poster Frame command. A drop-down menu will appear.
- 4. Select Current Frame.



5. The current frame will become the poster frame.



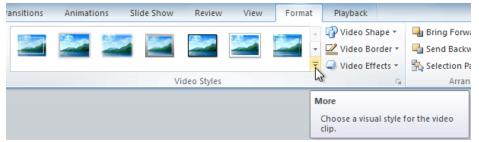
The new poster frame

If you would prefer to use a picture from your computer, you can select **Image from file** from the menu.

Apply a Video Style:

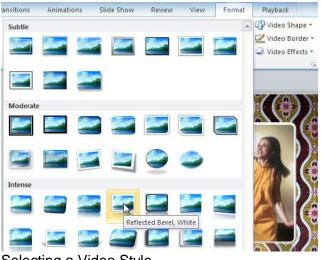
1. Select the video. The **Format** tab will appear.

- 2. Select the Format tab.
- 3. In the **Video Styles** group, click the **More** drop-down arrow to display all the video styles.



Viewing all of the available styles

4. Select the desired style.



Selecting a Video Style

5. The new style will be applied to the video.



The updated video Insert a SmartArt Illustration:

- 1. Select the **Insert** tab.
- 2. Select the **SmartArt** command in the Illustrations group. A dialog box will appear.

Insert Design	Transitions	Animations	Slide Show	Review View
s 👔 🕹				A 🔒 🖌
lip Screenshot Photo rt - Album - Images	Shapes Smar	N	Hyperlink Action	Text Header Wo Box & Footer
	Inse	rt SmartArt Gi	Insert a SmartA communicate in SmartArt graph graphical lists a diagrams to mo	ics range from and process ore complex as Venn diagrams
	0	Press F1 for n	nore help.	

The SmartArt Command

- 3. Select a **category** on the left of the dialog box and review the SmartArt graphics that appear in the **center**.
- 4. Select the desired SmartArt graphic and click **OK**.

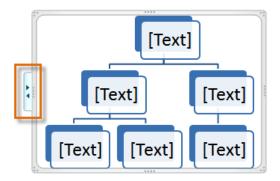
Choose a SmartArt Graphic		? ×
Image: All Image: List Image: Process Cycle Image: Hierarchy Relationship Image: Pyramid Image: Picture Image: Office.com	ierarchy	Hierarchy Use to show hierarchical relationships progressing from top to bottom.
		OK Cancel

Selecting a SmartArt graphic

To see more details about a graphic, click on any image, and a larger preview of the graphic with **additional text details** will appear on the **right side** of the dialog box.

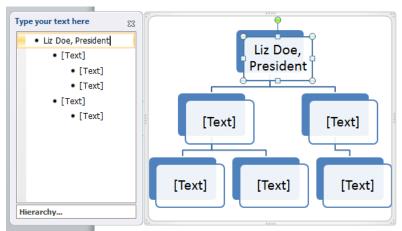
Add Text to a SmartArt Graphic:

- 1. Select the graphic. A border will appear around it with an **arrow** on the left side.
- 2. Click the **arrow** on the left side of the graphic to open the task pane.



The arrow to open the task pane

3. Enter text next to each bullet in the task pane. The information will appear in the graphic, and will resize to fit inside the shape.



Typing text into the task pane

4. To add a new shape, press **Enter**. A new bullet will appear in the task pane, and a new shape will appear in the graphic.

You can also add text by clicking on the desired shape and then typing your text. This works well if you only need to add text to a **few shapes**. However, for more complex SmartArt graphics, working in the **task pane** is often faster.

Convert Existing Text to SmartArt

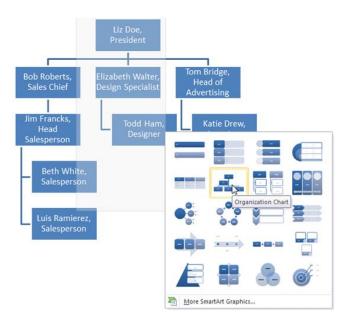
- 1. Select the list or paragraph you want to change to SmartArt and right click. A drop-down menu will appear.
- 2. Hoverthe mouse over Convert to SmartArt.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

· LIZ DUE, I	X Cut
Bob R	Chief
• Jin Sal	Paste Options:
•	A Eont Paragraph Bullets
•	Convert to SmartArt
• Elizab Specia	Convert to Smarkin Hyperlink Synonyms
• To	🕃 Tranglate
• Tom E	Format Text Effects
Adver	
• Ka	ie Drew, Assoc
	/ 🕂 🚑 🍂
	More SmartArt Graphics

Converting text to SmartArt

3. Select the desired SmartArt graphic, or click **More SmartArt Graphics** at the bottom of the menu to view more options.



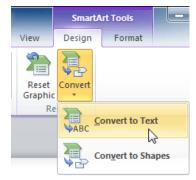
You can also convert SmartArt back to text. Select your SmartArt, then click on the SmartArt ToolsDesign tab. Click Convert, and select

Convert to Text. Converting SmartArt to text

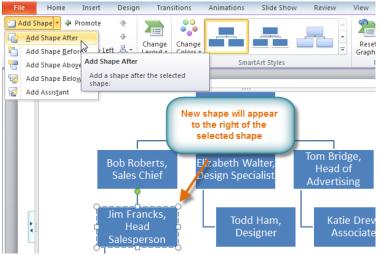
Changing the Organization of a SmartArt Graphic

Add a Shape to a Graphic:

1. Select the graphic. The **Design** and **Format** tabs appear on the Ribbon.



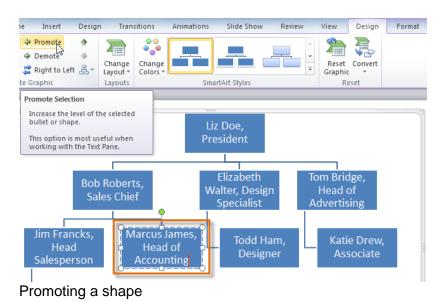
- 2. Select the **Design** tab.
- 3. Decide where you want the **new shape** to appear and select one of the shapes nearby.
- 4. Click the drop-down arrow on the **Add Shape** command in the Graphics group. A menu will appear.
- Select Add Shape Before or Add Shape After to add a shape on the same level as the one you selected. To add a shape above or below that one, select Add Shape Above or Add Shape Below.



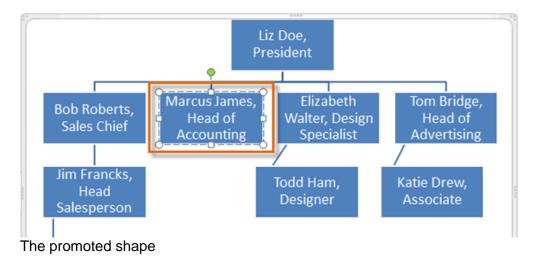
Adding a shape

Move Shapes to a Higher or Lower Level:

- 1. Select the graphic. The **Design** and **Format** tabs appear on the Ribbon.
- 2. Select the **Design** tab.
- 3. Select the **shape** you would like to move.
- 4. To move the shape to a higher level, click the **Promote** command in the Create Graphic group, or click **Demote** to move it lower.



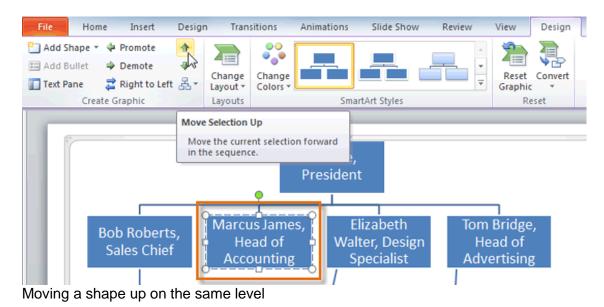
5. The shape will move one level higher or lower.



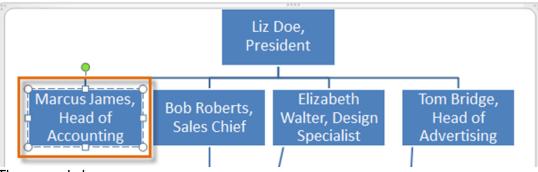
You can also demote and promote shapes from within the **task pane**. With the **insertion point** in the task pane, press the **Tab** key to demote a shape. Press the **Backspace** key (or **Shift-Tab**) to promote a shape. It's a lot like creating an outline with a **multilevel list** in Word 2010.

Rearrange Shapes on the Same Level

- 1. Select the graphic. The **Design** and **Format** tabs appear on the Ribbon.
- 2. Select the **Design** tab.
- 3. Select the **shape** you would like to move.
- 4. In the Create Graphic group, click Move Up or Move Down.



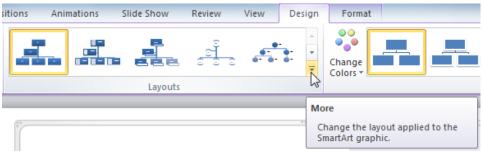
5. The shape will move one space up or down.



The moved shape

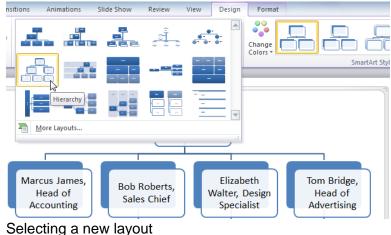
Change the SmartArt Layout:

- 1. Select the graphic. The **Design** and **Format** tabs will appear on the Ribbon.
- 2. Click the **Design** tab.
- 3. In the Layouts group, click the Moredrop-down arrow to view all of the layouts.



Viewing the SmartArt layouts

4. Hover the mouse over each layout to see a live preview.



^{5.} Select the desired layout.

If the new layout is very different from the old one, some of your text may not show up. Before selecting a new layout, check carefully to make sure no important information gets lost.

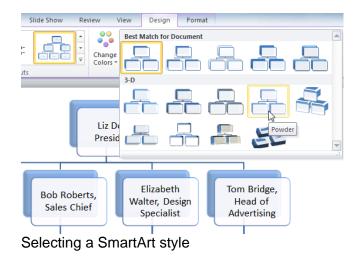
Change the SmartArt Style:

- 1. Select the graphic. The **Design** and **Format** tabs will appear on the Ribbon.
- 2. Click the **Design** tab.
- 3. In the SmartArt Styles group, click the More drop-down arrow to view all of the styles.

view View Design Format	
Change Colors • SmartArt Styles	Reset Convert Graphic * Reset
	More Choose an overall visual style for the SmartArt graphic.

Viewing the SmartArt styles

4. Hover the mouse over each style to see a live preview.



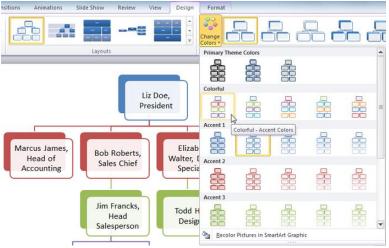
5. Select the desired style.

Change the Color Scheme:

PowerPoint provides a variety of **color schemes** to use with SmartArt. The color schemes use **Theme Colors**, so they will vary depending on which **Theme** you are using.

- 1. Select the graphic. The **Design** and **Format** tabs will appear on the Ribbon.
- 2. Select the **Design** tab.
- 3. Click the **Change Colors** command. A drop-down menu appears showing various color schemes.
- 4. Select the desired color scheme.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Selecting a new color scheme

If you want to change the appearance of a **single shape** within the SmartArt graphic, select the shape and click the **Format** tab. You can then modify the **Shape Style**, **color**, **effects** or other settings for that shape.

Rehearse and Record Slide Shows

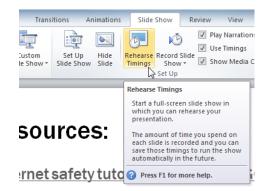
PowerPoint 2010 offers you two useful options for rehearsing and preparing the timing and delivery of your presentation in advance: **Rehearse Timings** and **Record Slide Show**.

Rehearsing Slide Show Timings

Rehearsing timings can be useful if you want to set up a presentation to play at a certain speed without having to click through the slides to present it. Think of it as a tool to help you practice presenting your slide show. Using this feature, you can save timings for each slide and animation. PowerPoint will then play back the presentation with the same timings when you present it.

Rehearse Timings:

- 1. Select the Slide Show tab and locate the Set Up group.
- 2. Click the **Rehearse Timings** command. You will be taken to a full screen view of your presentation.



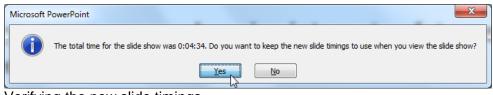
The Rehearse Timings command

 Practice presenting your slide show. When you are ready to move to the next slide, click the Next button on the Recording Toolbar in the top left corner. If you prefer, you can also use the right arrow key.

Recording	- ×
0:00:11	5 0:00:11
Next	

Navigating to the next slide using the Recording toolbar

4. When you have reached the end of the show, press the **Esc** key to end your slide show. A dialog box will appear with the total time of your presentation.



Verifying the new slide timings

5. If you are satisfied with your timings, click **Yes**.

If you need more than one try to get the timings just right, the **Recording Toolbar** has options to let you take a break or start over on a slide. To pause the timer, click the **pause** button on the toolbar. No actions taken while the timer is paused will be included in the timings. To re-record the timings on the current slide, simply click the **repeat** button.



The Recording toolbar

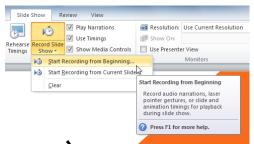
Recording Your Slide Show

The **Record Slide Show** feature is similar to the **Rehearse Timings** feature, but more comprehensive. If you have a microphone for your computer, you can even **record voice-overnarration** for the entire presentation. This is useful if you plan on using your slide show for a self-running presentation or a video. Your mouse won't show up on screen in recorded slide shows, so if you would like to **point out details on screen**, you can use PowerPoint's **laser pointer** option.

Record a Slide Show:

1. Click the **Slide Show** tab and locate the **Set Up** group.

2. Click the **Record Slide Show** drop-down arrow.



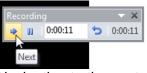
The Record Slide Show command

- 3. Select either Start Recording from Beginning or Start Recording from Current Slide. The Record Slide Show dialog box will appear.
- 4. Select the desired options. Remember, you can only record narration if you have a **microphone** attached to your computer.

Record Slide Show	8 <mark>×</mark>
Select what you want to record befor Slide and animation timings Narrations and laser pointer	re you begin recording.
Start <u>R</u> ecording	Cancel

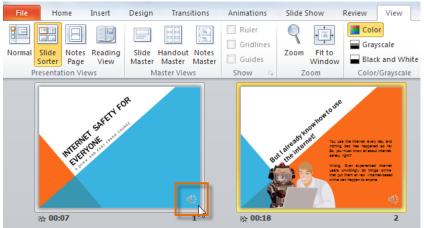
The Record Slide Show dialog box

- 5. Click Start Recording. Your presentation will open full screen.
- Perform your slide show. Make sure to speak clearly into the microphone if you are recording narration. When you are ready to move to the next slide, click the **Next** button on the **Recording Toolbar** in the top left corner or use the right arrow key.



Navigating to the next slide using the Recording toolbar

- 7. When you reach the end of the show, press the **Esc** key to exit.
- 8. Your slide show timings and narration are now included in your presentation. The slides with narration will be marked with a **speaker icon** in the bottom right corner.



Slides with narration

To point out details during your recording, press and hold the **Ctrl** key on your keyboard. Your cursor will show up as a **laser pointer**. Simply move your mouse to indicate the desired details. Release the **Ctrl** key when you are finished pointing out things on screen.



Remove Narration or Timings from a Recorded Slide Show:

- 1. Click the **Slide Show** tab and locate the **Set Up** group.
- 2. Click the **Record Slide Show** drop-down arrow.
- 3. Hover your mouse over **Clear**.

Slide	Show	Re	view View						
Rehearse Timings	Record Slide Show *		 Play Narrations Use Timings Show Media Controls ecording from Beginning 	<u>ا</u>	Resolution: Use Current Resolutio Show On: Use Presenter View Monitors		•		
	ÞÖ	Start <u>R</u> ecording from Current Slide							
		<u>C</u> lear		•	Clear	Clear Timing on Current Slide			
					Clear	r Timings on <u>A</u> ll Slides			
						r <u>N</u> arration on Current Slide r Narrations on <u>A</u> ll Slides			

Clearing timing on all slides 4. Select the desired option.

Sharing Presentation Options

PowerPoint 2010 offers several options to enhance or even totally change the way you deliver presentations. Instead of presenting your slide show normally, you can choose to present it as a **video**, or even **broadcast** it live on the Web so that others can view it remotely. No matter how you choose to give your presentation, you can enhance it by **customizing** your slide show to remove or reorder slides, or **printing handouts** to help your audience take notes. All of these options can help you give a polished and professional presentation.

Presenting Your Slide Show as a Video

The **Create a Video** feature allows you to save your presentation as a video. This can be useful, as it lets your viewers watch the presentation whenever they like. To make sure your viewers have enough time to view each slide, you might want to **rehearse** the timings or **record** your slide show before using this feature.

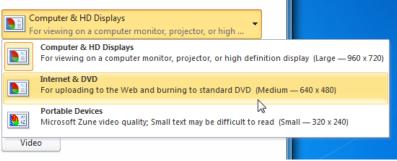
Create a Video:

- 1. Click the **File tab**. This takes you to the **Backstage view**.
- 2. Select **Save and Send**.
- 3. Select **Create a Video** under **File Types**. The **Create a Video menu** will appear on the right.

Save	Save & Send	Create a Video
Save As	Save to Send Save to Web Save to SharePoint Save to SharePoint Save to SharePoint	Create a Video Create a Video Create a Video Create a Video Video Create a Video Video Create a Video Video Create a Video Video Video Create a Video
Save & Send Help	Publish Slides File Types Change File Type	Computer & HD Displays For viewing on a computer monitor, projector, or high Use Recorded Timings and Narrations Use Recorded Timings will use the default dura
🔀 Exit	Create PDF/XPS Document Create a Video Package Presentation for CD	Seconds to spend on each slide: 05.00 ¢
	Create Handouts	

Creating a video in the Save and Send tab

4. Click the drop-down arrow next to **Computer and HD Displays** to select the size and quality of your video.



Selecting video size and quality

- 5. Select the drop-down arrow next to **Recorded Timings and Narrations**.
 - Choose Don't Use Recorded Timings and Narrations if you don't have or don't wish to use recorded timings. You can adjust the default Seconds to spend on each slide: in the box below the drop-down menu.
 - Choose **Use Recorded Timings and Narrations** if you have already recorded timings and narrations and would like to use them in your video.

Computer & HD Displays For viewing on a computer monitor, projector, or high definition display (L Use Recorded Timings and Narrations Slides that do not have timings will use the default duration set below. Any r	Click here if you do not wish to use recorded timings and narrations
Don't Use Recorded Timings and Narrations Use Recorded Timings and Narrations Use Recorded Timings and Narrations Sildes will use the default duration set below. Any recorded la Record Timings and Narrations Record Timings and Narrations	
Preview Timings and Narrations conds to spend on each slide: 05.00	
	Click here to use recorded

Selecting recorded timings and narration

- 6. Click the Create Video command. The Save As dialog box will appear.
- 7. Select the location where you wish to save the presentation, then enter a name for the presentation.

P Save As		x
😋 🔾 🔻 🔰 🕨 Presentations 🕨 Tim	✓ 4y Search Tim	٩
Organize 🔻 New folder	8≡ ◄ 🧯)
Microsoft PowerPc Name	Date modified Type	
Favorites	No items match your search.	
Desktop		
🖳 Recent Places		
퉬 Web Ready		
😝 Libraries		
Documents Music		
Pictures T	III	۴
File name: Internet Safety for Everyone		•
Save as type: Windows Media Video		•
Authors: Tim Dragic	Title: Internet Safety for Everyone	
Tags: Add a tag	Subject: Specify the subject	
) Hide Folders	Tools]

Saving the video

8. Click **Save**. A status bar will appear in the bottom right corner of the PowerPoint window as PowerPoint creates your video. When the bar is completely green, your video is ready to view, send, or upload.

N ∦			6	Ó			
11	₩ 00:35				12		
Creating vide	eo InternetSafetyforEveryone.wmv	and a	200%	0	tel i		3
		2		P 13	(9:01 AM	

The status bar making the time until the video is complete The finished video uploaded to YouTube

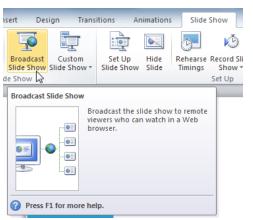
Broadcasting Your Slide Show to Remote Audiences

Broadcasting a presentation remotely is surprisingly easy. All you and your viewers need is an internet connection-- they don't even need PowerPoint. Once your viewers are connected, you can start the presentation as you normally would.

Please note that you cannot edit your presentation or mark it with a highlighter or pen while you are broadcasting a slide show. You also cannot use PowerPoint to speak to your audience. Plan to communicate with your viewers through teleconferencing, or pre-record your narration.

Broadcast a Slide Show:

- 1. Select the Slide Show tab and locate the Start Slide Show group.
- 2. Click the **Broadcast Slide Show** command. The **Broadcast Slide Show** dialog box will open.



The Broadcast Slide Show command

3. Click Start Broadcast. A status bar will appear as PowerPoint prepares your broadcast.

Broadcast Slide Show	? ×
Broadcast Slide Show	
Broadcast the slide show to remot Web browser.	e viewers who can watch in a
Broadcast Service	
PowerPoint Broadcast Service The PowerPoint Broadcast Service is PowerPoint 2010. Anyone who rece watch it. You will need a Windows More Information	ives a link to the broadcast may
By clicking 'Start Broadcast', you ag	ree to the following terms:
Service Agreement	
Change Broadcast Service	Start Broadcast Cancel

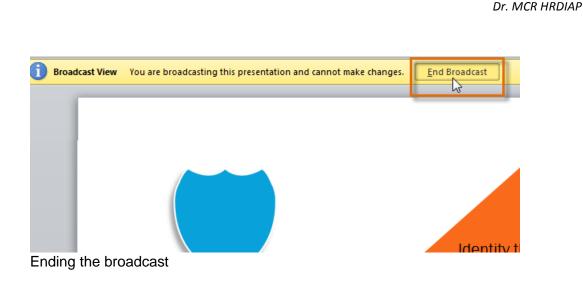
The Broadcast Slide Show dialog box

4. A link will appear. Select the link, and click **Copy Link** to make a copy of the link, or **Send in Email** to send an email with the link to your viewers.

Broadcast Slide Show	? <mark>x</mark>
Broadcast Slide Show	
Share this link with remote viewers and the	n start the slide show.
http://sn1-pptbroadcast.officeapps.live.com/p/P pptbid=d2579500-44ca-475b-98f5-0677714e23d	
Copy Link ⊡ Send in Emäil	
	Start Slide Show

Copying the link for the broadcast

- 5. Click Start Slide Show.
- 6. Present your slide show.
- 7. When you are finished, click End Broadcast in the yellow bar at the top of the screen.

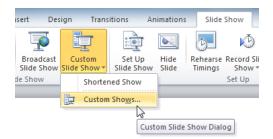


Customizing Your Slide Show

Sometimes you might want to **hide** a slide while still keeping it in your presentation. For instance, if you are presenting a slide show to more than one group of people, hiding or even rearranging certain slides could help you tailor your slide show to each group you present it to. You could also choose to create a shortened version of your slide show to present when you're short on time. The **Custom Slide Show** feature allows you to create and name different versions of your slide show with hidden or rearranged slides.

Create a Custom Show:

- 1. Select the Slide Show tab and locate the Start Slide Show group.
- 2. Click the **Custom Slide Show** command.



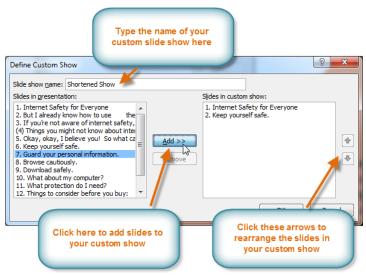
The Custom Slide Show command

- 3. Select Custom Shows.... The Custom Shows dialog box will appear.
- 4. Click **New**. The **Define Custom Show** dialog box will appear.

Custom Shows		? X
Custom shows:		New
		<u>R</u> emove
		Сору
	Close	Show

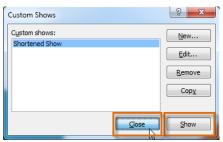
Creating a new custom show

- 5. Locate the **Slide show name** box and type in a name for your custom show.
- Select the slides in the Slides in presentation: box that you would like to include in your custom show, then click Add>> to add them to the Slides in custom show: box. If necessary, use the up and down arrows to reorder the added slides.



Adding slides to the custom show

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Select **Close** to exit or **Show** to view your custom show.



Closing the Custom Show dialog box

You can also hide slides by selecting the **Hide Slide** command, which can be found on the **Slide Show** tab. To unhide a slide, simply click the **Hide Slide** command again.

itions Ar	nimations	Slide	Show	Revie	w \
Set Up Slide Show		ehearse imings	Record Show Set Up] Play Na] Use Tir] Show I
	Hide Slide Hide the presental It will not full-scree	tion. t be sho	slide fro wn durir		

The Hide Slide command

Creating Handouts of a Presentation

Printing handouts with images of your slides can be helpful to your audience, as it gives them a hard copy of the information you're presenting. Plus, they can take notes on the handouts as you present your slide show.

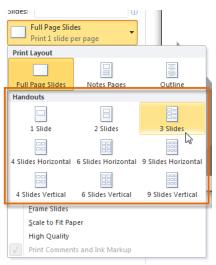
Create Handouts of a Presentation:

- 1. Click the File tab. This takes you to the Backstage view.
- 2. Click **Print**.

File Home	Insert	Design	Transitions	Animatio
Image: Save Save As Image: Save As Image: Open Image: Close		Print	Print Copies: 1	* *
Info	Pr	inter		0
Recent	0	Z Lexmarl Ready	k X422 (MS) on F	ILE 👻
New			Printer P	roperties
	Se	ttings		
Print	l i	📥 Print Al	l Slides	
Save & Send			tire presentation	
Help	Sli	des: Full Pag Print 1 s	je Slides slide per page	•
Options				S.
🔀 Exit			ne Sided int on one side o	of th 🔻
		Collated 1,2,3 1	d 1,2,3 1,2,3	-
		Graysca	le	•
			Edit Header	& Footer

The Print tab in the Backstage view

- 3. Click the drop-down arrow in the box that says **Full Page Slides**, and locate the **Handouts** group.
- 4. Select a page layout for your handouts. Up to nine slides can be displayed per page. Note that the **3 slides** layout offers lined space for your viewers to take notes.



Selecting a handouts layout

5. Click the **Print** command.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

Home	Insert	Design	Transitions	Animatio
4s		Print	Print Copies: 1	*
	Pr	inter		0
	S. M.	Exmarl Ready	k X422 (MS) on F	ILE 👻
			Printer P	roperties
	Se		l Slides	
	٩s	As Pri	As Print Printer Weady Settings	As Print Print Printer P

If you would like to add a header or footer to your handouts, click the **View** tab on the Ribbon, then select **Handout Master**. Just type your header or footer information into the boxes provided. To return to the normal view, click **Exit Master View**.

Design	Trans	itions	Animations	Slic	le S	how	Review	View	
Slide Master	N	Master	RulerGridlinesGuides	Zoo		Fit to Window	_	scale and Wh	
Master Vik≩s Show ₪ Handout Master View Open Handout Master view to change the design and layout of printed handouts.			F	Zo	om	Color/	Grayscal	e	

The Handout Master View command

Internet Basics

7.1 What is the Internet?

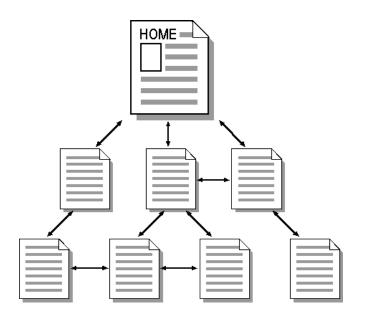
- The Internet, sometimes called simply "the Net," is a worldwide system of computer networks - a network of networks in which users at any one computer can, if they have permission, get information from any other computer (and sometimes talk directly to users at other computers). The U.S. Department of Defense laid the foundation of the Internet roughly 30 years ago with a network called ARPANET. But the general public didn't use the Internet much until after the development of the World Wide Web in the early 1990s.
- In 1957, the U.S. government formed the Advanced Research Projects Agency (ARPA), a segment of the Department of Defense charged with ensuring U.S. leadership in science and technology with military applications. In 1969, ARPA established ARPANET, the forerunner of the Internet.
- ARPANET was a network that connected major computers at the University of California at Los Angeles, the University of California at Santa Barbara, Stanford Research Institute, and the University of Utah. Within a couple of years, several other educational and research institutions joined the network.
- In response to the threat of nuclear attack, ARPANET was designed to allow continued communication if one or more sites were destroyed. Unlike today, when millions of people have access to the Internet from home, work, or their public library, ARPANET served only computer professionals, engineers, and scientists who knew their way around its complex workings.

7.2 What is the World Wide Web?

- The World Wide Web came into being in 1991, thanks to developer Tim Berners-Lee and others at the European Laboratory for Particle Physics, also known as Conseil European pour la Recherche Nucleure (CERN). The CERN team created the protocol based on hypertext that makes it possible to connect content on the Web with hyperlinks. Berners-Lee now directs the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), a group of industry and university representatives that oversees the standards of Web technology.
- Early on, the Internet was limited to noncommercial uses because its backbone was provided largely by the National Science Foundation, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, and the U.S. Department of Energy, and funding came from the government. But as independent networks began to spring up, users could access commercial Web sites without using the government-funded network. By the end of 1992, the first commercial online service provider, Delphi, offered full Internet access to its subscribers, and several other providers followed.
- In June 1993, the Web boasted just 130 sites. By a year later, the number had risen to nearly 3,000. By April 1998, there were more than 2.2 million sites on the Web.
- Today, the Internet is a public, cooperative, and self-sustaining facility accessible to hundreds of millions of people worldwide. Physically, the Internet uses a portion of the

total resources of the currently existing public telecommunication networks. Technically, what distinguishes the Internet is its use of a set of protocols called TCP/IP (for Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol). Two recent adaptations of Internet technology, the intranet and the extranet, also make use of the TCP/IP protocol.

- For many Internet users, electronic mail (e-mail) has practically replaced the Postal Service for short written transactions. Electronic mail is the most widely used application on the Net. You can also carry on live "conversations" with other computer users, using Internet Relay Chat (IRC). More recently, Internet telephony hardware and software allows real-time voice conversations.
- The most widely used part of the Internet is the World Wide Web (often abbreviated "WWW" or called "the Web"). Its outstanding feature is hypertext, a method of instant cross-referencing. In most Web sites, certain words or phrases appear in text of a different color than the rest; often this text is also underlined. When you select one of these words or phrases, you will be transferred to the site or page that is relevant to this word or phrase. Sometimes there are buttons, images, or portions of images that are "clickable." If you move the pointer over a spot on a Web site and the pointer changes into a hand, this indicates that you can click and be transferred to another site.
- To view files on the Web, you need Web browsing software. You use this software to view different locations on the Web, which are known as Web pages. A group of Web pages is a Web site. The first page of a Web site is often called the *home page*.



• Just as each household in the world has a unique address, each Web page in the world has a unique Internet address, sometimes called a URL. For example, the Internet address of the Windows home page is <u>http://www.microsoft.com/windows</u>.

Terms to Be Familiar With:

- **Browser**--Contains the basic software you need in order to find, retrieve, view, and send information over the Internet.
- **Download**--To copy data from a remote computer to a local computer.
- **Upload**—To send data from a local computer to a remote computer.
- **E-mail** E-mail (electronic mail) is the exchange of computer-stored messages by telecommunication. E-mail can be distributed to lists of people as well as to individuals. However, you can also send non-text files, such as graphic images and sound files, as attachments sent in binary streams.
- Filter Software that allows targeted sites to be blocked from view. Example: X-Stop, AOL@School
- Home Page The beginning "page" of any site.
- HTML (HyperText Markup Language) The coding language used to create documents for use on the World Wide Web. There are three-letter suffixes used in coding that help to identify the type location one is viewing
- HTTP (HyperText Transport Protocol) the set of rules for exchanging files (text, graphic images, sound, video, and other multimedia files) on the World Wide Web. Relative to the TCP/IP suite of protocols (which are the basis for information exchange on the Internet), HTTP is an application protocol.
- **Hypertext** Generally any text that contains "links" to other text.
- Search Engine A web server that collects data from other web servers and puts it into a database (much like an index), it provides links to pages that contain the object of your search.
- TCP/IP -- TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) is the basic communication language or protocol of the Internet. It can also be used as a communications protocol in a private network (either an intranet or an extranet). When you are set up with direct access to the Internet, your computer is provided with a copy of the TCP/IP program just as every other computer that you may send messages to or get information from also has a copy of TCP/IP.
- URL (Uniform Resource Locator) The Internet address. The prefix of a URL indicates which area of the Internet will be accessed. URLs look differently depending on the Internet resource you are seeking.
- WWW (World Wide Web) A technical definition of the World Wide Web is: all the resources and users on the Internet that are using the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP).

7.3 What is a Web Browser?

A Web browser contains the basic software you need in order to find, retrieve, view, and send information over the Internet. This includes software that lets you:

- Send and receive electronic-mail (or e-mail) messages worldwide nearly instantaneously.
- Read messages from newsgroups (or forums) about thousands of topics in which users share information and opinions.
- Browse the World Wide Web (or Web) where you can find a rich variety of text, graphics, and interactive information.

The most popular browsers are Microsoft Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator The appearance of a particular Web site may vary slightly depending on the browser you use.

Exploring the Internet using Microsoft Internet Explorer

Start Internet Explorer by double-clicking the icon

Internet Explorer opens to the homepage set as the default.

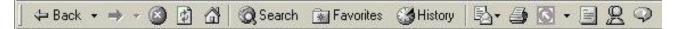
🚰 Louisiana Center For Educational Technology Region IV - Microsoft Internet Explorer	- 🗆 🗙
<u>j Eile Edit View Favorites Iools H</u> elp	-
j ⇔ Back • → - ② ② ☆ ② Search 📾 Favorites ③History 🖏 - ④ ③ • 🗐 👷 ♀ 옷	
Address 🕢 http://www.vrml.k12.la.us/mike/	▼ 🖓 Go

vour desktop.

7.4 Toolbars

The Microsoft Internet Explorer toolbar consists of buttons that are shortcuts for menu commands. They make browsing faster and easier.

Internet Explorer 5.5 Standard Buttons Toolbar:



- **Back.** Lets you return to pages you've viewed, beginning with the most recent. Right-click the *Back* button and select from a list of recently visited sites.
- **Forward.** Lets you move forward through pages you've viewed using the *Back* button. Right-click the *Forward* button and select from a list of recently visited sites.
- **Stop.** Halts the process of downloading a Web page. Click this if you want to stop downloading a page for any reason for example, if you're having trouble downloading it or if you don't want to wait for it to download. Then try downloading it again or browse elsewhere.
- **Refresh.** Updates any Web page stored in your disk cache with the latest content. When you return to a page that you've visited, your browser displays the file stored in your disk cache, rather than the current page on the World Wide Web. If a web page doesn't come up the whole way or is taking abnormally long to load, try the Refresh or Reload button sometimes this will load the page better.
- **Home.** Returns you to your home page. You can designate any Web page as your home page.
- **Search.** Displays a choice of popular Internet search engines in the left pane. Your search results appear in the left pane, too. When you click a link, the page appears in the right pane, so you don't lose sight of your search results.

- **Favorites.** Displays a list of the sites you have marked. Click any item in the list to jump to it.
- **History.** Shows a list of Web sites you've visited.
- Mail. Connects you to the Microsoft Outlook Express messaging and collaboration client so you can read e-mail and newsgroup messages.
- **Print.** Prints the page you're viewing. This is one way to save information from the Internet so that you don't have to reconnect to view it again. You can even print the URL associated with each hyperlink, making it easy to navigate to the site later.
- Edit. Opens a file in the Microsoft Word word processor that contains the HTML code for the page you're viewing so you can see and even edit it.
- Discussion. Access a discussion server.
- Messenger. Opens Windows Messenger.
- **Media.** Displays a list of audio and video media options using Real Player or the Windows Media Player.

7.5 What is a URL?

Every server on the Internet has an IP number, a unique number consisting of 4 parts separated by dots. The IP number is the server's address. 165.113.245.2 128.143.22.55

However, it is harder for people to remember numbers than to remember word combinations. So, addresses are given "word-based" addresses called URLs. The URL and the IP number are one and the same.

The standard way to give the address of any resource on the Internet that is part of the World Wide Web (WWW). A URL looks like this:

http://www.matisse.net/seminars.html telnet://well.sf.ca.us gopher://gopher.ed.gov/

The URL is divided into sections:

transfer/transport protocol :// server (or domain). generic top level domain/path/filename

The first part of a URL defines the transport protocol.

http:// (HyperText Transport Protocol) moves graphical, hypertext files ftp:// (File Transfer Protocol) moves a file between 2 computers gopher:// (Gopher client) moves text-based files news: (News group reader) accesses a discussion group
telnet:// (Telnet client) allows remote login to another computer

Address 🖉 http://www.vrml.k12.la.us/tltc/mainmenu.htm	
Welcome to the - Microsoft Internet Explorer <u>File Edit Vi</u> ew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp	
$ \Rightarrow Back \bullet \Rightarrow \bullet \bigcirc \ \ \bigcirc \ \ \bigcirc \ \ \bigcirc \ \ \bigcirc \ \ $	
Address 🕘 http://www.vrml.k12.la.us/tltc/mainmenu.htm	🝷 🔗 Go

Here's an example:

http://www.vrml.k12.la.us/tltc/mainmenu.htm

- http is the protocol
- www.vrml.k12.la.us is the server
- **tltc/** is the path
- mainmenu.htm is the filename of the page on the site
- You do not have to enter http://, most browsers will add that information when you press Enter or click the button at the end of the Address Bar.
- To view recently visited Web sites, click the down arrow at the end of the address field.
- When you start typing a frequently used Web address in the Address bar, a list of similar addresses appears that you can choose from. And if a Web-page address is wrong, Internet Explorer can search for similar addresses to try to find a match.
- The URL **must** be typed correctly. If you get a "Server Does Not Have A DNS Entry" message, this message tells you that your browser can't locate the server (i.e. the computer that hosts the Web page). It could mean that the network is busy or that the server has been removed or taken down for maintenance. Check your spelling and try again later.

7.6 What are Domains?

Domains divide World Wide Web sites into categories based on the nature of their owner, and they form part of a site's address, or uniform resource locator (URL). Common top-level domains are:

.com—commercial enterprises	.mil—military site
.org—organization site (non-profits, etc.)	.int—organizations established by international treaty
.net—network	.biz—commercial and personal
.edu—educational site (universities, schools, etc.)	.info—commercial and personal
.gov—government organizations	.name—personal sites

Additional three-letter, four-letter, and longer top-level domains are frequently added. Each country linked to the Web has a two-letter top-level domain, for example .fr is France, .ie is Ireland.

7.7 Home Page & History

Go to Tools on the menu bar and click Internet Options. The following window opens with the General tab active.

To Set the Home page:

- 1. With the desired home page active in the web browser window, click Use Current. The URL is placed in the Address field.
- 2. Click Apply to set the new home page.
- 3. Click OK to close the Internet Options box.

To Make Changes to History:

- 1. Specify the number of days pages are to be kept in history.
- 2. Click on Clear History to remove all web pages visited since last cleared.

Home	page You can change which page to use for your home page. Address: http://www.msn.com/
	Use <u>C</u> urrent Use <u>D</u> efault Use <u>B</u> lank
<u>e</u>	Pages you view on the Internet are stored in a special folder for quick viewing later. Delete Cookjes Delete <u>Files</u> Settings
History	The History folder contains links to pages you've visited, for quick access to recently viewed pages. Days to keep pages in history. 20 😴 Clear History
	ors Fonts Languages Accessibility

7.8 The Cache

When you explore the World Wide Web, your browser keeps track of the pages you've visited and saves them on your hard disk so they'll load faster when you return to them. This saves you time and money because you can view the saved pages without being connected to the Internet. The saved files, your "Temporary Internet Files", are stored in your disk cache.

To Empty your Disk Cache

When you browse, your disk cache can fill up with files you no longer need. Here's how to empty your Internet Explorer disk cache.

For Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher:

- 1. On the *Tools* menu of your Internet Explorer toolbar, click *Internet Options*.
- 2. Click the *General* tab.
- 3. In the Temporary Internet Files area, click *Delete Files*, and then click *OK*.
- 4. Click **OK** to close **Internet Options**.

To Change the Size of your Internet Explorer Disk Cache

You can change the amount of hard-disk space reserved for your disk cache. A larger disk cache may display previously visited pages faster, but it will decrease the amount of hard-disk space available for other files. Here's how to set the size of your disk cache.

For Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher:

- 1. On the **Tools** menu of your Internet Explorer toolbar, click **Internet Options**.
- 2. Click the General tab.
- 3. In the Temporary Internet Files section, click Settings.
- 4. In the Temporary Internet Files Folder section, drag the arrow on the Amount of Disk Space to Use slider to the percentage of disk space you want designated for your disk cache, and click OK.
- 5. Click OK to close Internet Options.

Marking Frequently Accessed Sites

Links Toolbar

Use the Links Toolbar to keep track of sites that are visited frequently or need to be accessed quickly.

There are several ways to add a link to the Links Toolbar.

- 1. Go to the web page you want linked.
- 2. On the Internet Explorer title bar or in the Address field, left click on the icon, hold the click and drag the *iii* link from the title bar to the **Links** toolbar. Notice there is now a bold I beam. Release the mouse and the link is inserted on the toolbar.

Links 🙋 Customize Links 🖉 Free Hotmail 🖉 Windows Media 🖉 Windows 🥔 Citation Machine -- Landmarks for Schools

🕘 Louisi <u>File Edi</u> Dack

Address 4

Links 🍯

- To add the same link to Favorites. click the Favorites button on the Standard Buttons toolbar. The window splits in half with Favorites on the left and the web page currently being viewed on the right.
- Left click, hold and drag the link from the Links toolbar into the Favorites window.
- Release the mouse. The link is now placed in Favorites.

7.9 Favorites

Go to Favorites on the menu bar. To add a link Favorites folder click Add to Favorites. The fo window opens.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>av</u>	prites Iools Help
🕁 Back 🔹 🔿 👻 🙆	😰 🚮 🔞 Search 🙀 Favorites 🛞 Media 🎯 🛃 🖌 🎒 👋
Address 🙋 http://www.v	rml.k12.la.us/mike/
Links 🧧 Customize Links	Free Hotmail Windows Media Windows
Favorites	× ×
😭 Add 🔁 Organize.	
BellSouth	
Payments	ANI
🚞 Links	
E Moviefone.com	CEN 1
Lesson Plans	CEN
Statistics	904 North Frederick Ave.
Region IV TLTC	For
	Add Favorite
	Internet Explorer will add this page to your Favorites list.
	Make available offline Customize Cancel
a link to the	
he following	Name: Louisiana Center For Educational Technology Region I
	Create in: Favorites New Folder
	Black History
	Create New Folder
	Internet Explorer will create the following folder for you. You can use this folder to organize shortcuts on your Favorites menu.
	Falderman .
200	Folder name:
206	

- Click the **OK** button and the name of the currently displayed page will be added as the last item on the favorite list without putting it in a folder.
- To place the displayed page in an existing folder, click on the desired folder in the **Create in:** field and then click the **OK** button.
- Create a new folder. Click the **New Folder...** button. The following **Create New Folder** window opens. Type the name for the new folder in the **Folder name:** field. Click the **OK** button.

Create a Shortcut on the Desktop

- Right click anywhere on the desired web page (except over an image or link).
- A Pop-Up menu appears, click on Create Shortcut.
- Click the OK button to place a shortcut to the desired page on your desktop.

<u>B</u> ack F <u>o</u> rward	
<u>S</u> ave Background As Set as Background <u>C</u> opy Background Set as <u>D</u> esktop Item	Microsoft Internet Explorer
Select <u>A</u> ll Easte	A shortcut to the current page will be placed on your desktop.
Create Sho <u>it</u> cut Add to <u>F</u> avorites <u>V</u> iew Source	Cancel
Encoding +	
Print <u>R</u> efresh	
Properties	

Organize Favorites

- Click Favorites on the menu bar and choose Organize Favorites.
- Drag and drop any link or folder to reposition it.
- Links can be dragged and dropped into folders.
- Highlight a link, click once on the link, then click on the **Move to folder** button. The **Browse for Folder** window opens. Locate the desired folder to move the link into, select the folder then click **OK**.
- Create a new folder by clicking on the **Create Folder** button.
- Rename folders by highlighting the appropriate folder then click the **Rename** button.
- Remove folders or links by highlighting and clicking the Delete button or the Delete key on the keyboard.

Searching the World Wide Web

When you do what is called "searching the Web," you are NOT searching it directly. It is not possible to search the WWW directly. The Web is the totality of the many web pages which reside on computers (called "servers") all over the world. Your computer cannot find or go to them all directly. What you are able to do through your computer is access one or more of many intermediate search tools available now. You search a search tool's database or collection of sites -- a relatively small subset of the entire World Wide Web. The search tool provides you with hypertext links with URLs to other pages. You click on these links, and retrieve documents, images, sound, and more from individual servers around the world.

There is no way for anyone to search the entire Web, and any search tool that claims that it offers it all to you is distorting the truth.

7.10 How Do Search Engines Work?

Search Engines for the general web (like all those listed above) do not really search the **World Wide Web** directly. Each one searches a database of the full text of web pages selected from the billions of web pages out there residing on **servers**. When you search the web using a search engine, you are always searching a somewhat stale copy of the real web page. When you click on **links** provided in a search engine's search results, you retrieve from the server the current version of the page.

Search engine databases are selected and built by computer robot programs called **spiders**. Although it is said they "crawl" the web in their hunt for pages to include, in truth they stay in one place. They find the pages for potential inclusion by following the links in the pages they already have in their database (i.e., already "know about"). They cannot think or type a **URL** or use judgment to "decide" to go look something up and see what's on the web about it.

If a web page is never linked to in any other page, search engine spiders cannot find it. The only way a brand new page - one that no other page has ever linked to - can get into a search engine is for its URL to be sent by a human to the search engine companies as a request that the new page be included. All search engine companies offer ways to do this.

After spiders find pages, they pass them on to another computer program for "indexing." This program identifies the text, links, and other content in the page and stores it in the search engine database's files so that the database can be searched by keyword and whatever more advanced approaches are offered, and the page will be found if your search matches its content.

Some types of pages and links are excluded from most search engines by policy. Others are excluded because search engine spiders cannot access them. Pages that are excluded are referred to as the "**Invisible Web**" -- what you don't see in search engine results. The Invisible Web is estimated to be two to three or more times bigger than the visible web. For more information about the Invisible Web and how to find and use the web "hidden" in it, please go to the Library at the University of California at: http://www.lib.berkeley.edu/TeachingLib/Guides/Internet/What.

7.11 Things to Be Cautious About on the Internet

- **Accuracy**: Be cautious not to believe everything on the Internet. Almost anyone can publish information on the Internet, and some of it may be false. Check all information for accuracy through additional reputable sources.
- **Security:** When sending information over the Internet, be prepared to let the world have access to it. There are ways to gain access to anything that you send to anyone over the Internet, including e-mail. Be extremely cautious when sending confidential information to anyone.
- **Copyright:** Always give credit to the author of any information (including graphics) found on the Internet. Often permission can be granted from an author to use their material for educational purposes.
- Viruses/Worms: These usually destructive computer programs hide inside of innocent looking programs, web pages and e-mail attachments. When triggered, often by the date or time on the computer's internal clock or calendar, it executes a nuisance or damaging function such as displaying a message on your screen, corrupting your files,

or reformatting your hard disk. Today, worms access your e-mail address book and send themselves automatically. Make sure you've got virus protection software installed and that you update their "virus definition" files at least monthly.

Introduction to Access 2010

Access 2010 is a software program (relational database software) in the Microsoft 2010 Office Suite that allows users to create, manage, query and run reports on large amounts of data in any .

A database is a collection of data that is stored in a computer system. Databases allow their users to enter, access, and analyse their data quickly and easily. A database is a collection of tables

Why Use a Database?

- Excel is great at storing and organizing numbers, Access is far stronger at handling nonnumerical data like names and descriptions. Non-numerical data plays a big role in almost any database, and it's important to be able to sort and analyse it.
- Access or any DBMS compared to other databases (like Excel) apart from storing data has connectivity among the objects.
- A relational database has lists and the objects within them relate to one another.
- Each Access database consists of multiple objects that let you interact with data. Databases can include forms for entering data, queries for searching within it, reports for analyzing it, and of course, tables for storing it.

8.1 Interface elements

The three main components of the Access 2010 user interface are:

- The Ribbon is the strip of tabs across the top of the program window that contains groups of commands.
- The Backstage view is the collection of commands that you see on the File tab on the ribbon.
- The Navigation Pane is the pane on the left side of the Access program window that lets you work with database objects.

These three elements provide the environment in which you create and use databases.

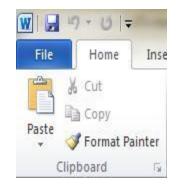
Ribbon

- The ribbon primarily consists of tabs that have groups of buttons.
- The ribbon has main tabs that group related commonly-used commands, contextual tabs that appear only when you can use them, and the Quick Access Toolbar, a small toolbar that you can customize with required commands.
- On the ribbon tabs, some of the buttons provide a gallery of choices, other options launch a command.

Backstage View

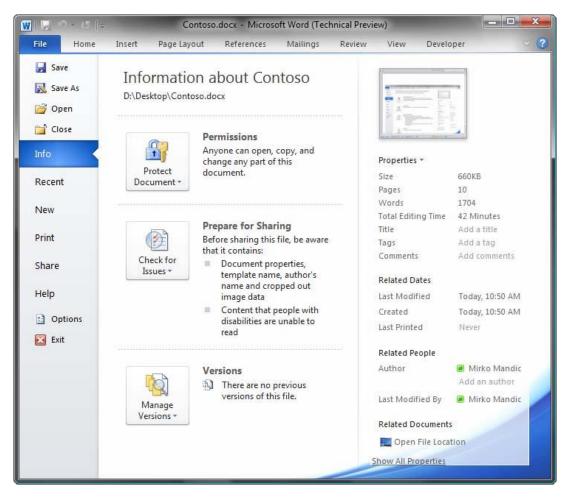
The Backstage view occupies the **File** tab on the ribbon and contains many commands. The Backstage view also contains other commands that apply to an entire database file. In Backstage view, you can create a new database, open an existing database, publish a database to the Web via SharePoint Server, and perform many file and database maintenance tasks.

File Tab



File Tab in Access 2010

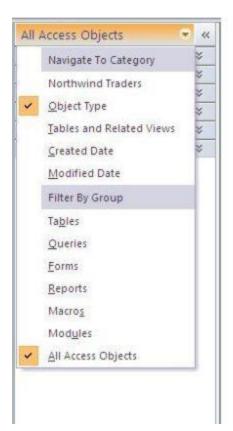
Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Backstage View

Navigation Pane: The Navigation Pane helps you organize your database objects, has a variety of ways to view objects and is the main means of opening or changing the design of a database object.

The Navigation Pane is organized by categories and groups.



All Access Objects	
Tables	*
Queries	*
Forms	*
Reports	*
Macros	*
Modules	×

All Access Objects 📀				
-	ries	* *		
For	ns	¥		
Rep	orts	*		
1	Yearly Sales Report			
E.	Top Ten Biggest Ord	ers		
1	Supplier Phone Boo	k		
5	Supplier Address Bo	ok		
	Quarterly Sales Report			
Product Sales Quantity by Em				
Product Sales by Total Revenue				
Product Sales by Category				
Product Category Sales by M				
Monthly Sales Report				
Invoice				
	Employee Phone Bo	ok		
	Employee Address B	ook		

Objects In Access Database

Tables	In Access, data is stored in tables. A table is a set of columns and rows, with each column referred to as a field. Each value in a field represents a single type of data. Each row of a table is referred to as a record.
Queries	You use queries to retrieve specific data from your database and to answer questions about your data. For example, you can use a query to find the names of the employees in your database who live in a particular state.
Forms	Forms give you the ability to choose the format and arrangement of fields. You can use a form to enter, edit, and display data.
Reports	Reports organize or summarize your data so you can print it or view it onscreen. You often use reports when you want to analyze your data or present your data to others.
Macros	Macros give you the ability to automate tasks. You can use a macro to add functionality to a form, report, or control.
Modules	Like macros, modules give you the ability to automate tasks and add functionality to a form, report, or control. Macros are created by choosing from a list of macro actions, whereas modules are written in Visual Basic for Applications.

The Ribbon

The ribbon is the primary replacement for menus and toolbars and provides the main command interface in Access 2010. One of the main advantages of the ribbon is that it consolidates, in one place, those tasks or entry points that used to require menus, toolbars, task panes, and other UI components to display.

When you open a database, the ribbon appears at the top of the main Access window, where it displays the commands in the active command tab.

File	Home	Creat	e Extern	al Data	Datab	ase Tool	s		
						8 mm			Form Wizard
Application Parts *	Table	Table Design	SharePoint Lists *	Query Wizard	Query Design	Form	Form Design	Blank Form	More Forms *
Templates	1 March 19	Table	s	Qu	eries			Forms	s

The ribbon contains a series of command tabs that contain commands. In Access 2010, the main command tabs are **File**, **Home**, **Create**, **External Data**, and **Database Tools**. Each tab contains groups of related commands, and these groups surface some of the additional new UI elements, such as the gallery, which is a new type of control that presents choices visually.

The commands that are available on the ribbon also reflect the currently active object. For example, the **Design** tab only appears when you have an object open in Design view.

A relational database has lists and the objects within them relate to one another.

Tabs

Command Tab	Options
Home	Select a different view.
	Copy and paste from the clipboard.
	Set the current font characteristics.
	Set the current Font Alignment.
	Apply rich text formatting to a memo field.
	• Work with records (Refresh, New, Save, Delete, Totals, Spelling, More).
	Sort and filter records.
	Find records.
	Create a new blank table.
	Create a new table using a table template.
	 Create a list on a SharePoint site and a table in the current database that links newly created list.
Create	- Crasta a now blank table in Design view
	Create a new blank table in Design view.
	Create a new form based on the active table or query.
	Create a new pivot table or chart.
	Create a new report based on the active table or query.
	Create a new query, macro, module, or class module.

Import or Link to external data.
Export data.
Collect and update data via e-mail.
Create saved imports and saved exports.
Run the Linked Table Manager.
 Move some or all parts of a database to a new or existing SharePoint site.
Launch the Visual Basic editor or run a macro.
Create and view table relationships.
Show/hide object dependencies.
Run the Database Documenter or analyze performance.
• Move data to Microsoft SQL Server or to an Access (Tables only) database.
Manage Access add-ins.
Create or edit a Visual Basic for Applications (VBA) module.

Contextual Command Tabs

In addition to the standard command tabs, Access 2010 also has contextual command tabs. Depending on the context (object working with), one or more contextual command tabs might appear next to the standard command tabs.

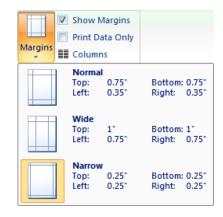
	Form Tools	
Database Tools	Design	Layout

Activate a Contextual Command Tab

- 1. Click the contextual command tab.
- 2. The contextual command tabs contain commands and features that you need to work in a specific context.
- 3. For example, when you open a table in Design view, the contextual tabs contain commands that apply only when you are working with a table in that view.

Galleries

The ribbon also uses a kind of control called a gallery. The gallery control is designed to focus your attention on getting the results that you want.

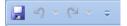


Hide and Restore the Ribbon

- 1. Double-click the active command tab (the active tab is the highlighted tab).
- 2. Double-click the active command tab again to restore the Ribbon.

Quick Access Toolbar (QAT)

The Quick Access Toolbar is a toolbar adjacent to the ribbon that allows one-click access to commands. The default set of commands include **Save**, **Undo**, and **Redo**, and you can customize the Quick Access Toolbar to include other commands.



Customize the Quick Access Toolbar

- 1. Click the rightmost drop-down arrow in the toolbar.
- 2. Under **Customize Quick Access Toolbar**, click the command that you want to add, and you are done.

Or, if the command is not listed, click **More Commands**, and proceed to the next step of this procedure.

- 3. In the **Access Options** dialog box, select the command or commands that you want to add, and then click **Add**.
- 4. To remove a command, highlight it in the list on the right, and then click **Remove**. Alternatively, double-click the command in the list.
- 5. Click **OK** when you are done.

Open a Database Object, Such As A Table, Form, Or Report

1. In the Navigation Pane, double-click the object.

-or-

- 2. In the Navigation Pane, select the object, and then press ENTER.
- 3. In the Navigation Pane, right-click an object, and then click Open.
- Note that you can set an option to open objects with a single click in the Navigation Options dialog box.
- 5. The Navigation Pane divides your database objects into categories, and these categories contain groups.

To show or hide the Navigation Pane

Click the button in the upper-right corner of the Navigation Pane is or press F11.

The Navigation Pane from Appearing By Default

1. Click the **File** tab, and then click **Options**.

The Access Options dialog box appears.

- 2. In the left pane, click **Current Database**.
- 3. Under Navigation, clear the Display Navigation Pane check box, and then click OK.

Status Bar

This standard UI element continues to be the place to look for status messages, property hints, progress indicators, and so on. With Access 2010, the status bar also takes on two standard functions that you will also see in the status bar of other Office 2010 programs: View/Window switching and Zoom.

The status bar can be enabled or disabled in the Access Options dialog box.

Show Or Hide The Status Bar

1. Click the **File** tab, and then click **Options**.

The Access Options dialog box appears.

- 2. In the left pane, click **Current Database**.
- 3. Under **Application Options**, select or clear the **Display Status Bar** check box. Clearing the check box turns off the display of the status bar.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Mini Toolbar

Using Access 2010 you can format text more easily by using the mini toolbar. When you select text for formatting, the mini toolbar automatically appears above the selected text. If you move the mouse pointer closer to the mini toolbar, the mini toolbar fades in and you can use it to apply bold, italic, font size, color, and so on. As you move the pointer away from the mini toolbar, the mini toolbar fades away.

Calibri		11	T P T	¶4 ≹≣ ∰
BIU	A - 2 -			

Format Text by Using The Mini Toolbar

1. Select the text to format.

The mini toolbar transparently appears above the text.

2. Apply formatting by using the mini toolbar.

Getting Help

When you have a question, you can get help by pressing F1, by clicking the question mark icon on the right side of the ribbon.



- You can also find Help in Backstage view:
- Click the File tab, and then click Help.

8.2 WORKING WITH TABLES

While there are four types of database objects in Access 2010, **tables** are arguably the most important. Even when you're using forms, queries, and reports, you're still working with tables, since that's where all your **data** is stored. Tables are at the heart of any database, so it's important to understand how to use them.

Open A Recently Used Database

• In Backstage view, click **Recent**, and then click the database that you want to open.

• Access opens the database.

Open A Database From Backstage View

- Click the **File** tab, and then click **Open**. When the **Open** dialog box appears, browse and select a file, and then click **Open**.
- The database opens.

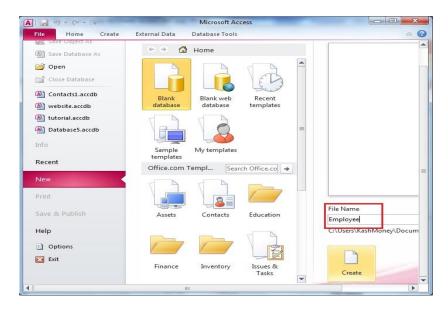
Create A New Blank Database

1. Start Access from the Start menu

2. Start > Programs > Microsoft Office > Microsoft Access 2010.

The Backstage view appears. File Menu > New > Blank database

Enter the name of the access database under File Name and click on Create button.



The new database is created, and a new table is opened named **Table1** as a starting point.

Table-1 (Default table created)

A 🛃 ♥) - (♥ - -	Employee :	Database (Access 200	07 - 2010) M	Tabl	e Tools
File Home C	reate E	xternal Data 🛛 Data	abase Tools	Fields	Table
AB 12	GRD I			*	B ~
(or other			Formatting	*	
View Text Number	Currency	Properties	\$ % ,	4.0 .00 0.€ 00.	Field Validation *
Views Add	& Delete		Formatt		
All Access Objects		Table1			
Search	5	ID	- Click to A	Add 🚽	
Tables	\$	- * (Ne	ew)		
Table1					
		<u>Open</u>			
		<u>)</u> esign View			
	I	mport		• ·	
	1	xport			
	-	Co <u>l</u> lect and Update Da			
	∎Ž F	Rena <u>m</u> e			
		lide in this Group			

To create the fields in the table right click on the table and select Design View. A dialog box titled **Save As is displayed where the Table name can be modified.** Enter Field Name and Data Type information

A	a ¥7 • (≈ - ∓	Name of Street, or other		Table Tools	Employee :
File	Home Create	e External Data Database	e Tools	Design	
View	Key	Validation Rules Tools	Property Sheet Show	1	eate Data Ren Macros * eld, Record & 1
*	Employee				
	Field Name	Data Type		Desc	ription
	EmployeeID	AutoNumber 💌			
he		Field Pro	perties		
Navigation Pane	General Lookup				
no	Field Size	Long Integer			
at	New Values	Increment			
vig	Format				
Na	Caption	8.a			
	Indexed	Yes (No Duplicates)			
	Smart Tags				ermines the kin ore in the field.
	Text Align	General	that		on data types

Primary Key

A primary key is a unique identifier for a database record. When a table is created, one of the fields is typically assigned as the primary key. While the primary key is often a number, it may also be a text field or other data type.

The primary key also acts as a pointer to the record and provides a simple way for the DBMS to search, sort, and access the records. It also helps relate records across multiple tables. Each table can only have one primary key. The primary key field must also be defined for each record and not set to null.

Foreign Key

A foreign key (FK) is a column or combination of columns that is used to establish and enforce a link between the data in two tables. In a foreign key reference, a link is created between two tables when the column or columns that hold the primary key value for one table are referenced by the column or columns in another table. This column becomes a foreign key in the second table.

Data Types In Access 2010

Field Type	What It Holds
Text	Text up to 255 characters long (including spaces and punctuation). Use a Text field, not a Number field, for codes — such as phone numbers, ZIP codes, and other postcodes — even if they look like numbers.
Memo	Like a Text field, but more of them — up to 65,536 characters. A memo field can contain rich (formatted) text, and you can set it to Append Only, so that it can accumulate text notes, without allowing the user to delete what's already there.
Number	Only numbers. You may use + or – before the number, and a decimal point. If you plan to do math with a field, use a Number or Currency field.
Currency	Numbers with a currency sign in front of them (\$, ¥, and so on).
AutoNumber	Numbers unique to each record and assigned by Access as you add records, starting at 1. Use an AutoNumber field as the primary key field for most tables.
Date/Time	Dates, times, or both.
OLE Object	Object Linking and Embedding. Don't use it when creating a new database; use the new Attachment type instead because it stores data more efficiently.

Hyperlink	This text string is formatted as a hyperlink. (If you click the link, it takes you to the page.) This is especially useful if there's related information on the Web.
Yes/No	Yes or no (a particular condition is, or isn't, in effect) — or other two-word sets, such as True/False, On/Off, or Male/Female. Use a Yes/No field if you want to display the field as a check box on forms.
Attachment	You can store one or more entire files — pictures, sound, Word documents, even video — in one Attachment field.
Calculated	You enter a formula that Access uses to calculate the value of this field based on other fields in the table. Use a Calculated field when a calculated value will be used in many queries, forms, and reports.

Table in Design View

• To start creating a table in Design View, on the Ribbon, click Create. In the Tables section, click the Table Design button



- To open an existing table in Design View, in the Navigation Pane, right-click it and Click Design View.
- If a table is already opened, to switch it to Design View, right-click its tab and click Design View
- If a table is currently opened, to switch it to Design View, on the right side of the status bar, click the Design View button

A table in Design View is divided in two sections: one in the upper area and another in the bottom

Cars						×
Field Na	me		Dat	а Туре	Description	2
CarlD		AutoN		ber	-	
TagNumber		Text				
Make		Text				
Model		Text				
CarYear		Text				_
						1
		Fiel	ld Pro	operties		
Field Size Format Input Mask Caption Default Value	40					
Validation Rule				A field name	can be up to 64 characters long,	
Validation Text					aces. Press F1 for help on field	
Required	No				names.	
Allow Zero Length	Yes					
	No					
Indexed						
Indexed Unicode Compression	Yes					
	Yes No Control					
Unicode Compression						

- The top area is made of columns (named Field Name, Data Type, and Description) and rows.
- The lower portion of the window is made of two sections. To access the lower portion while the top section has focus, you can press F6 or click the lower item you want.
- The left section of the lower part is made of two tabs labelled General and Lookup.
- Each tab contains two columns and various rows.
- The number of rows and the contents of cells depend on what is selected in the upper section.

Create a Lookup Column

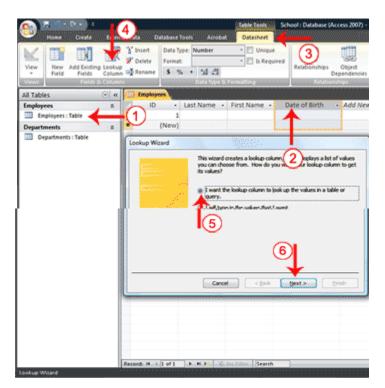
If a field can contain a finite list of values, you can create a Lookup Column and users can select the value they want from a list. For example, if the employees at a school can only work in one of the following departments: Administration, Computer Science, English, History, or Math. You can create a table Departments table that lists the departments and then use the list in the Employee table to assign each employee to a department.

Departments Table				
Department ID (Primary Key)	Department			

1	Administration
2	Computer Science
3	English
4	History
5	Math

Access has a wizard to help you create lookup columns. Creating a Lookup column creates a relationship between two tables.

Lookup Wizard



- 1. Open the table to which you want to add a lookup column.
- 2. Click the field label for the field before which you want to add a lookup column.
- 3. Activate the Datasheet tab. (You must be in Datasheet view.)
- 4. Click the Lookup Column button in the Fields & Columns group. The Lookup Wizard appears.
- 5. Make sure the radio button next to "I want the lookup column to look up the values in a table or query." is selected.
- 6. Click Next. The Lookup Wizard moves to the next page.

Select your table or query

A lookup column can be based on a table, a query, or a list of values you type. If you base your lookup column on a table or query, you must create the table or query before

creating the lookup column. A query is a list of rows and columns based on one or more tables. A query only displays the rows and columns you specify.

Lookup Wizard
Which table or query should provide the values for your lookup column? Table: Students
(1) → View 3 ⓐ Iables Queries Both
Cancel < Back Next > Enish

- 1. Click a radio button to select what you want to base your lookup column on. Choose from Tables, Queries, or Both.
- 2. Click to select the table or query you want.
- 3. Click Next. The Lookup Wizard moves to the next page.

Select fields

You choose the fields you want to appear in your lookup column. Be sure to include the primary key.

Lookup Wizard	
	Which fields contain the values you want included in your lookup column? The fields you select become columns in your lookup column.
Available Fields:	Selected Fields:
Department	>> Department ID
	<
-0	Cancel <back next=""> Enish</back>

- 1. Click the field you want.
- 2. Click the single right-arrow button . Access places the field in the Selected Fields column. Repeat this process to select additional fields. If you want all the fields in the table, click the double right-arrow button .

Note: Use the single left-arrow and the double left-arrows to deselect fields.

3. Click Next. The Lookup Wizard moves to the next page.

Sort fields

The Lookup Wizard allows you to sort the records in a lookup column. You can display records in order, either ascending (alphabetical from A to Z, lowest number to highest number, earliest date to latest date) or descending (alphabetical from Z to A, highest number to lowest number, latest date to earliest date). You can also sort within a sort. For example, you can sort by state and then within each state by city, and then within each city by street address. If you are creating a sort within a sort, create the highest level sort on line one, the next level sort on line two, and so on. In the state, city, and street address example, you create the state on line one, the city on line two, and the street address on line three.

W	Lookup Wizard What sort order do you want for the items in yo 2 ox? You can sort records by up to four fields, in e ther ascending or descending order.					
1	Department Ascending					
2	Ascending					
3	Ascending					
4	Ascending 3					
	Cancel < gack Next > Enish					

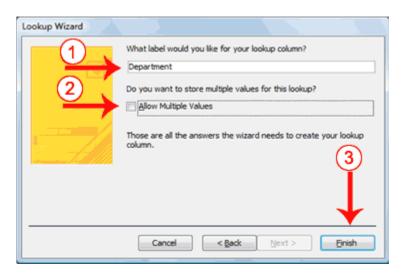
- 1. Click the down-arrow and then select the field you want to sort by.
- 2. Click to select a sort direction (the button toggles between ascending and descending). You can sort within a sort for up to four levels.
- 3. Click Next. The Lookup Wizard moves to the next page.

Lookup Wizard	
	When you select a row in the lookup column, you can store a value from that row in your database, or you can use the value later to perform an action. Choose a field that uniquely identifies the row. Which column in your lookup column contains the value you want to store or use in your database?
	Available Fields:
	Department ID Department
	2
	Cancel < gack Next > Einish

- 1. Click the key field.
- 2. Click Next. The Lookup Wizard moves to the next page.

Name the column

Field names appear at the top of each column. On this page of the Wizard you tell Access what you want to name your lookup column. In Access 2007, multiple values can appear in a field; click the Allow Multiple Values checkbox if you want to allow multiple values.



- 1. Type the name you want to give the column.
- 2. Click if you want to allow multiple values in the field.
- 3. Click Finish. Access creates the lookup column.

Tables Column Design Name of a Field

In the Design View:

- To create a new column and give it a name, click an empty cell under Field Name and type the desired name
- To change the name of an existing column, double-click its name in the Field Name column to select it and type the desired name
- To edit the name of an existing column, click somewhere in the name to put it into edit, use the Delete, the Backspace, and the arrow keys to edit it.

Text on the Status Bar

To create a status bar text for a field when designing a table:

- If the table is displaying in the Datasheet View, click any cell under its header. On the Ribbon, click Fields, in the Properties section, click Name & Caption. Click **Description** and type the desired text
- If the table is displaying in the Design View, click the name of the column. Under Description, type the string you want

The string would appear when the field receives focus in the table in Datasheet View

The Caption of a Field

On a column of a table, a caption is the string that the user sees on the column header. The caption that a column displays is not necessarily the name of the column.

- To give a desired column header in the top section of the Design View, click the field under the Field Name column. In the lower section of the window, click **Caption** and type the desired word or group of words
- To change the caption of a column but keep its name, switch the table to Design View, under Field Name, click the field. In the lower section of the window, click **Caption**, press F2 and edit the string

>>		Employees										×
	4	EmployeeID 👻	DateHired	- E	mploye	eNi 👻	FirstNam	ie 👻	Middle	elnitia 👻	LastNam	ie -
Pane	*	(New)										
P												
tio												
vigatio												
Nav												
	Re	cord: 🖂 🖂 1 of 1	► ► ► ► □	W.N	lo Filter	Search		•				
Auto	mat	ic number generate	d by the datab	ase e	naine				N	umlock	□ 弗 仙	4

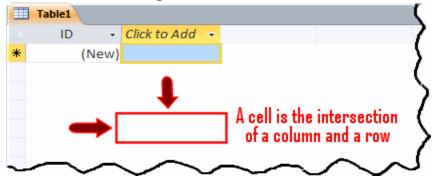
Notice the words in the columns headers (the captions)

Change View

- After designing the Table Data can be entered through the Datasheet View.
- To open the table in DataSheet View, Right Click on the Table and Click open
- Activate the Home tab.
- Click the down-arrow under the View button. A menu appears.
- Click the view you want. Access changes to the view you chose.

Table In a Datasheet view

A table is primarily an arranged list of columns and rows, each column and each row intersect to create a rectangular box called a cell:



The cell is actually the object that holds data of a table. A cell holds only one piece of information.

Scroll Bars

The vertical scroll bar / horizontal scroll bar would allow you to move up and down or left to right on the datasheet.

First Nam 👻	Last Nam 🗸	Date of Birth 🗸	Gdr 👻	City -	Stat -	ZIP Cod 🗸	Home P
Martine	Quarles	2/4/1986	Female	Washington	DC	20004	(202) 83
Gabrielle	Ledoux	6/23/1989	Female	Hyattsville	MD	20782	(301) 78
Albert	Linken	5/14/1988	Male	Chevy Chase	MD	20845	(301) 53
Mohamed	Husseini	1/5/1988	Male	Washington, I	DC	20008	(202) 55
Ismael	Zara	5/25/1990	Male	Laurel	MD	20707	(301) 35
Charles	Laurel	8/20/1990	Male	College Park	MD	20747	(301) 62
Paul	Marlly	10/20/1990	Female	Silver Spring	MD	20905	(301) 66
Anselme	Waters	7/23/1990	Male	Washington,		- 10-	
Millicent	Broadskey	9/10/1989	Female	Silver Spring	vert	ical Scro	bii Bar
Catherine	Chang	6/12/1987	Female	Washington, I	DC	20010	(202) 43
Jeanne	Gate	12/3/1988	Female	Rockville	MD	20850	(301) 46
Mauricette	Bassler	6/12/1988	Female	Hyattsville	MD	20707	(301) 35
Janet	West	6/2/1986	Female	Bethesda	MD	20872	(301) 51
Carole	Chance	10/22/1990	Female	Rockville	MD	20875	(301) 72
Santos	Pacheco	5/5/1988	Male	Arlington	VA	20202	(703) 65
George	Orion	12/22/1985	Male	Bethesda	MD	20850	(301) 80
Lester	Bell	12/6/1985	Male	Silver Spring	MD	20815	(301) 97
Sebastien	Porter	2/12/1985	Male	Silve Hori	zont	al Scroll	Bar
Donnie	Mart	6/8/1990	Female	Rock	20110		
Mincy	Franse	10/8/1991	Female	Laurel		/	(301) 79
Maurice	Walken	10/8/1990	Male	Washington	DC	010	(202) 58

Table Navigation Buttons

The lower left side of the table is made of four buttons used to navigate the table, one button used to create a new record, and a text box. Each button plays a specific role:

But ton	Name	Role
I	First Record	Allows moving to the first record of the table
4	Previous Record	Allows you to move one record back (if there is one) from the current record
1 of 3	Current Record	Displays the number representing the current record out of the total number of records

•	Next Record	Allows moving you one record ahead
H	Last Record	Allows moving you to the last record of the table
H23	New (Blank) Record	Used to enter a new record on the table

Save the table

- To save the table, right-click and click Save
- Type the name of the table

Save As		? X
Table Name:		
Corporate Items		
	ОК	Cancel

- Click OK
- To close the table, click its Close button

Table management

Tables in the navigation pane: The table is the primary object of a database. When you create a table and save it by giving it a name, Microsoft Access creates a section labelled Tables in the Navigation Pane and displays the name of the new table in that section.

All A	ccess Objects	
Search	ì	٩
Tabl	es	*
	Company Assets	
	Customers	
	Employees	

Opening a table

To open a table, first locate it in the Navigation Pane then:

- You can double-click the table
- You can right-click the table and click Open

Any of these actions causes the table to display in Datasheet View in the central area of the screen.

Closing a table

After using a table, you can close it. Before closing a table, first select its tab. Then, to close a table:

- You can click the close button $\stackrel{\times}{\rightharpoonup}$ on the right side of the tabs
- You can press Ctrl + Shift + F4

Selecting a Table

- To select a table in the Navigation Pane, simply click it
- If you had opened many tables and they are displaying in the main area of the screen, to select one, click its tab or its title bar
- If you have many tables displaying in the main area of the screen, you can press Ctrl + F6 continuously to switch from one table to the next until the desired one displays

Renaming a Table

If the name of a table is not appropriate, you can change it. To rename a table, in the Navigation Pane, you can right-click the name of the table and click Rename.

Deleting a Table

- In the Navigation Pane, right-click the table and click Delete
- In the Navigation Pane, click the table to select it. Then, on the Ribbon, click Home. In the Record section, click Delete
- In the Navigation Pane, click the table to select it and press Delete

Working on Columns in Tables

Changing the Width of a Column

To change the width of a column:

• You can position the mouse on the right border of a column header. The mouse pointer would change into a horizontal double arrow crossed by a vertical line:

	Table1	\sim
	ID 👻	Last Name 🕂 🕂 🖓 rst Name 👻
*	(New)	\smile

If you double-click, the column would be resized to the widest value of the column, provided the widest value is wider than the column header. If the widest value is

narrower than the column header, the column width would be widened enough to display the name of the column.

• You can click the column's right border and drag in the desired direction, left or right until you get the desired width

	Table1				
	ID 👻	Last Name 🕞	First Name 👻	E-mail Address 🖶 ᠇	MI -
*	(New)				

• You can right-click a column's name and click Column Width... This would open the Column Width dialog box where you can type the desired value and click OK

Column Width	? ×
Column Width: 11.75	ОК
🔲 Standard Width	Cancel
	Best Fit

Move a Column

To move a column in Datasheet View, first select it. Click and hold your mouse on it. Then, start dragging left or right in the desired direction. While your mouse is moving, a thick vertical line will guide you. Once the vertical line is positioned to the desired location, release the mouse

	ID 👻	Last Name 🕞	First Name 🔹	E-mail Address 🕞	MI	~
*	(New)		51			
			103			

Move a Group of Columns

To move a group of columns, first select them as we reviewed earlier. Click and hold the mouse on one of the selected columns. Start dragging left or right in the desired direction until the thick vertical guiding line is positioned in the desired location, then release the mouse

	Table1				
	ID 🔹	Last Name 📼	MI	🔸 First Name 📼	E-mail Address 👻 Add New Fiel
*	(New)				
			_		42

Inserting a Column

Inserting a column consists of adding one between two existing fields. To do this, right-click the column that will succeed it and click Insert Field

Or

- To insert a column using the ribbon, first click a cell under the column that will succeed it. Then, in the Fields & Columns section of the Datasheet tab, click the Insert button Insert
- To insert a column from the table, right-click the column that will succeed it and click Insert Column
- To insert a field from the Field Templates, click and drag it from the Field Templates and drop it to the left of the column that will succeed it

Table1		Field Templates 🔹 🗙
ID • * (New)	Item - Fax Number -	Select one or more fields to insert into your table. Currency Date and Time Hyperlink Checkbox Attachment Attachment Assets Item Description Category Condition Acquired Date Purchase Price Current Value Location Manufacturer Model Comments Attachments Retired Date Contacts Company

Rename Column

Before changing the name of a column:

- You can double-click its header
- You can right-click a column and click Rename Column
- When any cell under a column has focus, on the Ribbon, you can first click Datasheet. Then, in the Fields & Columns section, click Rename Column.

Any of these actions would put the name of the column into edit mode. You can then type the new desired name or change the existing name.

Hiding and Revealing a Hidden Column

To hide a column, you can drag the right border of its column header completely to its left border as we saw earlier to change the width of a column; when the vertical guiding line reaches the left border, release the mouse: the column would be hidden from the table.

	Company Assets	•		
	ID 👻	Category 🝷	Manufacturer	→++→ Model
*	(New)	(1) Category		
	Company Asset	5		
	ID 🔹	Category 🗸	Manufacturer	 Model
*	(New)	(1) Category		
	Company Asset	5		
	ID 👻	Category 👻	Model -	Acquired Date
*	(New)	(1) Category		

To hide one or a group of columns, you can right-click and click Hide Fields. You can also rightclick any column and click Unhide Fields. This would open the Unhide Columns dialog box.

Unhide Column s	? ×
Column:	
Employee #	
Last Name	
Title Notes	
Add New Field	
	Close

To hide a column, clear its check box.

To reveal a column or a group of columns previously hidden, right-click any column header on the table and click Unhide Column. In the Unhide Columns dialog box, put a check mark on each column you want to show.

Deleting a Column

To remove a column from a table:

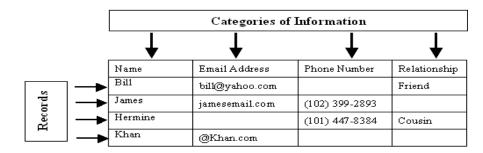
- Right-click the column's name and click Delete Field
- Select the column (or a group of columns), right-click anywhere in the table and click Delete Field
- Select a column (or a group of columns). Then, in the Add & Delete section of the Ribbon, click the Delete button



Any of these actions would present you a warning to confirm whether you still want to delete the column(s).

Data Entry Fundamentals

Data entry consists of entering values into the database and populating it with information. A table's cell holds one particular unit of data. All cells on the same (vertical) column belong to the same category of information.



Data Entry on a Table

- To perform data entry on a table, you can click a cell under a column header and type a value.
- A table appears with many rows of cells, when a table is empty with no record, only the cells just under the column header are accessible. Those cells appear with a type of blue color.
- If you click one of those cells, its background becomes white and its borders are orange, indicating that it is ready.

	Table1				
2	ID	-	First Name 📼	Last Name 🕞	Click to Add 🛛 👻
*	(N	ew)			

- Another way to indicate an empty record, the field of the most left column is marked with (New) and its row of records uses the same light-blue color.
- After typing a value in a cell, you can press Enter or Tab to move the caret to the next cell.
- When a record has been completed, the background color of its cells changes. The next record under it has the first cell marked as (New) and its empty cells are in blue. The other cells remain white

	Table1									
	ID 👻	First Name 🕞	Last Name 🕞	Click to Add 👻						
	1	Alain	Phoon							
*	(New)									

• The white cells cannot receive data: if you click them (with the left mouse button), nothing happens. You can only right-click them to get a context-sensitive menu.

There are three kinds of fields or cells the user will face:

- A field in which the user can type data,
- A field that displays a list as a combo box the user has to select from,
- A field that does not receive input from the user.
- After setting the data in a particular field, you can click another cell and type the desired data.
- Press the right arrow key to move to the next field or the left arrow to move to the previous field or by pressing Enter.
- Press Enter at the end of a record, the caret would move to the beginning of the next record.

Record Management in Datasheet View

Record Selection

Record maintenance consists of copying, pasting, or deleting records, etc require that the record(s) be selected first:

- To select a row or record in Datasheet View, click the desired row header
- To select a record, click any cell on its row. On the Ribbon, click Home. In the Find section, click the Select button and click Select



• To select more than one record, click and hold your mouse on one of their headers, then drag to cover the other desired row or rows's headers. When all desired rows are highlighted, release the mouse. Another technique used to select more than one row consists of clicking one row that will be at one end, pressing and holding Shift, and then clicking the row that will be at the other end.

To select all records of a table:

- Press Ctrl + A
- Click the button at the intersection of the column headers and the row headers
- 1. To select one record, position the mouse on the box to the left of the third record until the mouse turns into a right pointing arrow

	Cabins				
\$	Cabin ID 👻	Cabin Type 🕞	Deck 👻	Rate 1 Passe 👻	Rate 2 Passe 👻
	1	Inside	Riviera	289.00	578.00
	2	Outside	Riviera	319.00	638.00
→	3	Outside	Riviera	389.00	778.00
	4	Suite	Verandah	1009.00	2018.00
	5	Inside	Upper	379.00	758.00
	6	Inside	Main	359.00	718.00
	7	Outside	Riviera	349.00	698.00
	8	Inside	Upper	369.00	738.00
	9	Outside	Upper	429.00	858.00
	10	Suite	Main	885.00	1680.00
*	(New)				

2. Then click.

Cabin ID 👻	Cabin Type 👻	Deck 👻	Rate 1 Passe 👻	Rate 2 Passe 👻	Click to Add
1	Inside	Riviera	289.00	578.00	
2	Outside	Riviera	319.00	638.00	
3	Outside	Riviera	389.00	778.00	
4	Suite	Verandah	1009.00	2018.00	
5	Inside	Upper	379.00	758.00	
6	Inside	Main	359.00	718.00	
7	Outside	Riviera	349.00	698.00	
8	Inside	Upper	369.00	738.00	
9	Outside	Upper	429.00	858.00	
10	Suite	Main	885.00	1680.00	
(New)					

3. Notice that all cells of the second records are highlighted

- 4. Click the box to the left of the 7th record
- 5. Press and hold Shift
- 6. To select a range of records, click the box to the left of the 3rd record, and release Shift

	Cabins						
\angle	Cabin ID 👻	Cabin Type 👻	Deck 👻	Rate 1 Passe 👻	Rate 2 Passe 👻	Click to Add	•
	1	Inside	Riviera	289.00	578.00		
	2	Outside	Riviera	319.00	638.00		
	3	Outside	Riviera	389.00	778.00		
	4	Suite	Verandah	1009.00	2018.00		
	5	Inside	Upper	379.00	758.00		
	6	Inside	Main	359.00	718.00		
	7	Outside	Riviera	349.00	698.00		
	8	Inside	Upper	369.00	738.00		
	9	Outside	Upper	429.00	858.00		
	10	Suite	Main	885.00	1680.00		
*	(New)						

- 7. Notice that 5 records have been selected
- 8. To select all records, position the mouse on the button at the intersection of the column headers and the row headers

Ń	Cabin ID 👻	Cabin Type 🕞	Deck	+ R	Rate 1 Passe 👻	Rate 2 Passe 👻	Click to Add
6	1	Inside	Riviera		289.00	578.00	
	2	Outside	Riviera		319.00	638.00	
	3	Outside	Riviera		389.00	778.00	
	4	Suite	Verandah		1009.00	2018.00	
	5	Inside	Upper		379.00	758.00	
	6	Inside	Main		359.00	718.00	
	7	Outside	Riviera		349.00	698.00	
	8	Inside	Upper		369.00	738.00	
	9	Outside	Upper		429.00	858.00	
	10	Suite	Main		885.00	1680.00	
e	(New)						

9. Click

	Cabins						
\mathbb{Z}	Cabin ID 🚽	Cabin Type 🕞	Deck 👻	Rate 1 Passe 👻	Rate 2 Passe 👻	Click to Add	~
	1	Inside	Riviera	289.00	578.00		
	2	Outside	Riviera	319.00	638.00		
	3	Outside	Riviera	389.00	778.00		
	4	Suite	Verandah	1009.00	2018.00		
	5	Inside	Upper	379.00	758.00		
	6	Inside	Main	359.00	718.00		
	7	Outside	Riviera	349.00	698.00		
	8	Inside	Upper	369.00	738.00		
	9	Outside	Upper	429.00	858.00		
	10	Suite	Main	885.00	1680.00		
*	(New)						

10. Notice that all records have been selected.

11. Click any cell in the table

Record Deletion

- You can click a row header and press Delete
- You can right-click a row header and click Delete Record

	\$		Cabin ID 🔹	Cabin Type 👻	Deck 👻	Rate 1 Passe 🔻	Rate 2 Passe 🕶
able			1	Inside	Riviera	289.00	578.00
			2	Outside	Riviera	319.00	638.00
			3	Outside	Riviera	389.00	778.00
			4	Suite	Verandah	1009.00	2018.00
	Ne <u>w</u> Record	43	5	Inside	Upper	379.00	758.00
Ĩ.	Delete <u>R</u> ecord		6	Inside	Main	359.00	718.00
*	Cu <u>t</u>		7	Outside	Riviera	349.00	698.00
	<u>С</u> ору		8	Inside	Upper	369.00	738.00
8	Paste		9	Outside	Upper	429.00	858.00
*	Dow Height		10	Suite	Main	885.00	1680.00
۷L	<u>R</u> ow Height	⊬	(New)				

- 1. Click Delete Record
- 2. A warning message box will appear. Read it and click Yes
- 3. To delete more than one record, click and hold the mouse on the box to the left of record number 5, then drag up to include record number 2 in the selection

	Cabins				
\angle	Cabin ID 👻	Cabin Type 👻	Deck 👻	Rate 1 Passe 👻	Rate 2 Passe 👻
	1	Inside	Riviera	289.00	578.00
	2	Outside	Riviera	319.00	638.00
	3	Outside	Riviera	389.00	778.00
	4	Suite	Verandah	1009.00	2018.00
	5	Inside	Upper	379.00	758.00
	6	Inside	Main	359.00	718.00
	7	Outside	Riviera	349.00	698.00
	8	Inside	Upper	369.00	738.00
	9	Outside	Upper	429.00	858.00
	10	Suite	Main	885.00	1680.00
*	(New)				

	Cabins					
4	Cabin ID 🛛 👻	Cabin Type 🕞	Deck 👻	Rate 1 Passe 👻	Rate 2 Passe 👻	Click to Add
	1	Inside	Riviera	289.00	578.00	
	2	Outside	Riviera	319.00	638.00	
	7	Outside	Riviera	349.00	698.00	
	8	Inside	Upper	369.00	738.00	
	9	Outside	Upper	429.00	858.00	
	10	Suite	Main	885.00	1680.00	
*	(New)					
		Microsoft /	Access			×

4. On your keyboard, press Delete

5. Read the warning message box and press Enter

	Cabin ID 👻	Cabin Type 🕞	Deck 👻	Rate 1 Passe 👻	Rate 2 Passe 👻	Click to Add
	1	Inside	Riviera	289.00	578.00	
	2	Outside	Riviera	319.00	638.00	
	7	Outside	Riviera	349.00	698.00	
	8	Inside	Upper	369.00	738.00	
	9	Outside	Upper	429.00	858.00	
	10	Suite	Main	885.00	1680.00	
*	(New)					

Data Import and Export (MS-Excel)

Exporting Data from MS-Access to MS-Excel

- Click the table. Then, on the Ribbon, click External Data.
- In the Export section, click the Excel button

Or

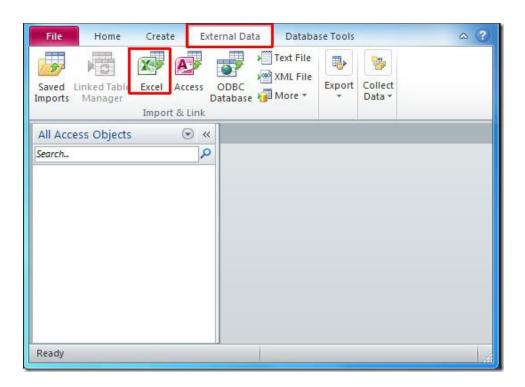
• In the Navigation Pane, right-click the desired table, position the mouse on Export, and click Excel

• This would open the Export - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box with the path where the file will be saved.

Export - Excel Spreadsheet		<u>?×</u>
Select the destination for the d	ata you want to export	
Specify the destination file name and form	iat.	
Eile name: C:\Documents and Set	tings\Administrator\My Documents\Employees.xlsx	Browse
File forma <u>t</u> : Excel Workbook (*.xls	x) 💌	
Specify export options.		
Export data with formatting Select this option to preserve mo	and layout. ost formatting and layout information when exporting a table, query, form,	or report.
	er the export operation is complete. Sults of the export operation. This option is available only when you export	formatted data.
Export only the selected rec Select this option to export only selected.	cords. the selected records. This option is only available when you export formatt	ed data and have records
	OK	Cancel

Importing a Microsoft Excel Spreadsheet

Microsoft Access allows you to import a spreadsheet from Microsoft Excel.



You will see *Get External Data* dialog box, it shows three different options of how and to where database will be stored.

External Data - I	Excel Spreadsheet	-		3
Select the so	ource and destination of the data	a ///		
Specify the source	ce of the data.			
Ele name:	C: \Users \Usman \Desktop \			Browse
Specify how and	where you want to store the data in the cu	rrent database.		
Import	t the source data into a new table in t	the current databas	e.	
	pecified table does not exist, Access will cre e imported data. Changes made to the sour			overwrite its contents
O Appen	d a copy of the records to the table:	Sheet1	*	
	pecified table exists, Access will add the rec source data will not be reflected in the data		e table does not exist, Access will o	create it. Changes made
🖱 Link to	the data source by creating a linked	table.		
	will create a table that will maintain a link to d in the linked table. However, the source of			ta in Excel will be
			OK	Cancel

Click Browse to select Excel worksheet you want to import and click Open.

 Import t If the spe with the ir Append a If the spe 	here you want to s he source data cified table does r nported data. Chas	00 -	s ▶ Usman ▶ Deskto folder	p 🕨 🔻	47	Search Desktop
Link to the Access with Acc	a copy of the re cified table exists, irce data will not to the data source I create a table th in the linked table.	 Microsoft Access Favorites Desktop Downloads Recent Places Libraries Homegroup 	Name	ps Worksheet.xlsx		B Date modif 2/18/2010 1 2/18/2010 1
		Computer				

Now the *Import Worksheet Wizards* will open up where you can select the desired worksheet from the list you want to import and click *Next*.

Show Worksheets

	how <u>W</u> orkshe how Named (Chaot	2					
mple da		heet'Sheet1'. Designation	Tasks		1111	1].
1 2		Author		Reviewing				-
		Analyst	Software			1		
3 4	Mr.XYZ		Software	Reviewing		1		
1	Mr.XYZ	Analyst		Reviewing		1		
6		Analyst	Software			1		
5	Mr.XYZ			Reviewing		1		
8		Analyst	Software			1		
9	Mr.XYZ	100 TT 10 TT 10 TT	and the state of the	Reviewing		1		
10		Analyst	Software					
11	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software	Reviewing				
12	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software	testing		1		
13	N- 997	Author	Sofruare	Reviewing				

Show Named Ranges

C Show Worksheets Employees					
Show Named <u>Ra</u>	inges PayrollInf	ormation			
mple data for range 'f		1			
	er DateWorked		TimeOut	TimeWorked	_
92094	4/7/2008	9:00	17:00	8.00	
72973	4/7/2008	9:00	17:00	8.00	
59797	4/7/2008	10:00	15:50	5.50	
72973	4/8/2008	9:00	16:00	7.00	
92094	4/8/2008	9:30	16:30	7.00	
59797	4/8/2008	9:00	17:50	8.50	
59797	4/9/2008	14:00	20:30	6.50	
20074	4/9/2008	9:00	17:00	8.00	
72973	4/9/2008	9:00	18:30	9.50	
92094	4/9/2008	9:00	17:00	8.00	
20074	4/10/2008	10:00	16:30	6.50	
392094	4/10/2008	9:30	17:30	8.00	
159797			17:00	8.00	

Click the First Row Contains Column Headings check box

Enable the *First row Contains Column Headings* checkbox. As mentioned earlier, your worksheet must have column's label in first row,

		tain column heading:	at					
P F	st Row Conf	tains Column Heading	gs					
			-					
ID	Name	Designation	Tasks	1111	HEFie	1410		 1
1 1	Mr.XYZ		Software Reviewing					-
2 2	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing					
3 3	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing					-
4 4	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing					
55	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing	1111				
5 6	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing					
77	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing	1111				
3 8	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing					
9 9	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing	1111				
010	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing					
111	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing	1111				
212	Mr.XYZ	and the second	Software testing					
313	10000000	Author	Software Reviewing					
-		Analyst	Software testing					-

Specify information about each of the fields you are importing. Select field/column in the area below and specify corresponding *Field Options*.

Next step provides different options of selecting primary key (Unique Identifier). You can enable *Let Access add primary key*, or choose your own primary key by selecting column/field label from drop-down box. We will select the default option, i.e., *Let Access add the primary key*. Click *Next*.

232	CRE NEE X CRE NEE X CRE NEE X CRE NEE X		Microsoft Access red uniquely identify ear Let Access add O Choose my own Ng primary key	primary key. primary key.						агу ксу Б	used to	
ID1	ID	Name	Designation	Tasks		1 1 1 1 1 1 1	111	ield1	0	 		
1 1	1		Author		Reviewing				~			_
2 2	2	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software		1111						0
3 3	3		Author		Reviewing	1111						
4 2	4	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software	testing	1111						
5 5	5	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software	Reviewing	1111						
6 6	6	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software	testing	1111						
77	7	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software	Reviewing	1111						
8 8	8	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software	testing	1111						
9 9	9	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software	Reviewing	1111						
1010	10	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software	testing	111						
11 11	11	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software	Reviewing							
12 12	12	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software	testing							
13 13	13	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software	Reviewing							
14 14	14	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software	testing							
200												*

Enable Save import steps to save the import steps for later use and click close.



The following shows an Excel worksheet that has been imported in Access 2010.

All Access Objects 🛛 💌	*	Sheet1	Addictivetips	Example	
Search	2	ID1 -	Name -	Designation +	Tasks -
Tables	*	1	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing
Addictivetips Example		2	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing
Sheet1		3	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing
Juccia		4	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing
		5	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing
		6	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing
		7	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing
		8	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing
		9	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing
		10	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing
		11	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing
		12	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing
		13	Mr.XYZ	Author	Software Reviewing
		14	Mr.XYZ	Analyst	Software testing
		* (New)			
		Record: 14 🔸	1 of 14 ► ► ►	a 😵 No Filter	Search

Right-click on imported table and click Design View to check for the data types.

Image: Primary Key Image: Pr	File Home Create Exte	ernal Data D	atabase Tools D	esign		۵	?
Field Name Data Type Description Tables	View Station Rules	Delete Rows	Sheet	Macros *	Macro	Dependencies	
Tables ID1 AutoNumber Addictivetips Example Name Text Designation Text Tasks Text Field Properties General Lookup Field Size 255 Format @ Input Mask Caption Validation Rule Validation Rule Validation Rule Validation Rule Validation Rule No Indexed Yes [Duplicates O] Unicode Compression No ME Sentence Mode None	All Access Objects 💿 «	Sheet1	Addictivetips Exar	nple			×
Tables ID1 AutoNumber Addictivetips Example Name Text Designation Text Tasks Text Field Properties General Lookup Field Size 255 Format Input Mask Caption Default Value Validation Rule Validation Rule Validation Text Required Adiduot Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) Unicode Compression No Mate Sentence Mode None	Search		Field Name	C	ata Type	Description	
Addictivetips Example Name Text Designation Text Tasks Text Field Properties General Lookup Field Size Pield Size Official Copy Field Size Outloak Optimized No No No Outloaked Yes Indexed Yes<		9 ID1		AutoNu	mber	1000 C C C	1
Designation Text Tasks Text Field Properties General Lookup Field Size Prield Size QB Input Mask Caption Default Value Validation Rule Validation Rule Validation Text Required A field name can be up to 64 characters long, including spaces. Press F1 for help on field names. A field names. Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) Unicode Compression No IME Sentence Mode None		Name		Text			
Sheet1 Tasks Text Field Properties General Lookup Field Size 255 Format © Input Mask © Caption O Default Value Validation Rule Validation Text Required No No Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) Unicode Compression No IME Sentence Mode None	Addictivetips Example		00				
Field Properties Field Properties General Lookup Field Size Field Size 255 Format @ Input Mask	Sheet1						
General Lookup Field Size 255 Format Imput Mask Caption Imput Mask Orfault Value Imput Mask Validation Rule Imput Mask Validation Text Including spaces. Press F1 for help on field names. Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None				5.445			
Field Size 255 Format Input Mask Caption Input Mask Caption Input Mask Validation Rule Input Mask Validation Text Including spaces. Press F1 for help on field names. Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None				Field P	roperties		-
Field Size 255 Format Input Mask Caption Input Mask Caption Input Mask Validation Rule Input Mask Validation Text Including spaces. Press F1 for help on field names. Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None		General Look	up		1		
Format Input Mask Input Mask Input Mask Caption Input Mask Default Value Input Mask Validation Rule Input Mask Validation Text Including spaces. Press F1 for help on field names. Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) Unicode Compression No IME Mode None		Research Contractor	approx a				
Input Mask Input Mask Caption Indexed Default Value Indexed Validation Rule Including spaces. Press F1 for help on field Validation Text Including spaces. Press F1 for help on field Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None		Format	Ø				
Default Value A field name can be up to 64 characters long, including spaces. Press F1 for help on field names. Validation Text Including spaces. Press F1 for help on field names. Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes [Duplicates O Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None		Input Mask		1275			
Validation Rule A field name can be up to 64 characters long, including spaces. Press F1 for help on field names. Validation Text No Required No Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O) Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None		Caption					
Validation Text including spaces. Press F1 for help on field Required No Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes (Duplicates O Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None		Default Value			1000000000		
Required No names. Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Indexed Yes (Duplicates O Unicode Compression IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None				8			12
Allow Zero Length Yes Indexed Yes [Duplicates O Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None		the manufacture of the second state			including sp		
Indexed Yes (Duplicates O Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None						names.	
Unicode Compression No IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None							
IME Mode No Control IME Sentence Mode None		and an an an and a second seco		icates O			
IME Sentence Mode None			Contraction of the second se				
		and the second s		01			
Smart Tags		and the second s	Mode None				
		Smart Tags		1.52			

Note: In Excel Data is in a list format; each column has a title/label in first row and contains similar data types (similar facts), and there is no blank rows and columns. Access recognizes them as fields and records.

Table Relationships

In a relational database, relationships enable you to prevent redundant data. Relationships are essential because they bring the data in your tables together so you can extract meaningful information.

For example, if you are designing a database that will track information about books, you might have a table called Titles that stores information about each book. There is also information you might want to store about the publisher. If you were to store all of this information in the titles table, the publisher's phone number would be duplicated for each title that the publisher prints.

A better solution is to store the publisher information only once in a separate table, Publishers. You would then put a pointer in the Titles table that references an entry in the Publishers table.

Enforce referential integrity between the Titles and Publishers tables. Referential integrity relationships help ensure that information in one table matches information in another.

Types of Table Relationships

A relationship works by matching data in key columns, usually columns with the same name in both tables. In most cases, the relationship matches the primary key from one table, which provides a unique identifier for each row, with an entry in the foreign key in the other table. There are three types of relationships between tables. The type of relationship that is created depends on how the related columns are defined.

• **One-To-Many Relationships** - A one-to-many relationship is the most common type of relationship. In this type of relationship, a row in table A (first table) can have many matching rows in table B(second table), but a row in table B can have only one matching row in table A. For example, the Publishers and Titles tables have a one-to-many relationship: each publisher produces many titles, but each title comes from only one publisher.

A one-to-many relationship is created if only one of the related columns is a primary key or has a unique constraint.

In Access, the primary key side of a one-to-many relationship is denoted by a key symbol. The foreign key side of a relationship is denoted by an infinity symbol.

- Many-To-Many Relationships In a many-to-many relationship, a row in table A can have many matching rows in table B, and vice versa. You create such a relationship by defining a third table, called a junction table, whose primary key consists of the foreign keys from both table A and table B. For example, the Authors table and the Titles table have a many-to-many relationship that is defined by a one-to-many relationship from each of these tables to the TitleAuthors table. The primary key of the TitleAuthors table is the combination of the au_id column (the authors table's primary key) and the title_id column (the Titles table's primary key).
- **One-To-One Relationships** In a one-to-one relationship, a row in table A can have no more than one matching row in table B, and vice versa. A one-to-one relationship is created if both of the related columns are primary keys or have unique constraints.

This type of relationship is not common because most information related in this way would be all in one table. You might use a one-to-one relationship to:

- ✓ Divide a table with many columns.
- ✓ Isolate part of a table for security reasons.
- ✓ Store data that is short-lived and could be easily deleted by simply deleting the table.
- \checkmark Store information that applies only to a subset of the main table.

In Access, the primary key side of a one-to-one relationship is denoted by a key symbol. The foreign key side is also denoted by a key symbol.

Referential Integrity

Referential integrity is a database concept that ensures that relationships between tables remain consistent. When one table has a foreign key to another table, the concept of referential integrity states that you may not add a record to the table that contains the foreign key unless there is a corresponding record in the linked table. It also includes the techniques known as cascading update and cascading delete, which ensure that changes made to the linked table are reflected in the primary table.

Consider the situation where we have two tables: Employees and Managers. The Employees table has a foreign key attribute entitled Managed By which points to the record for that employee's manager in the Managers table. Referential integrity enforces the following three rules:

- 1. We may not add a record to the Employees table unless the Managed By attribute points to a valid record in the Managers table.
- 2. If the primary key for a record in the Managers table changes, all corresponding records in the Employees table must be modified using a cascading update.
- 3. If a record in the Managers table is deleted, all corresponding records in the Employees table must be deleted using a cascading delete.

Create Relationships with MS-Access Tables

- 1. On the **Database Tools** tab, in the **Relationships** group, click **Relationships**.
- 2. The **Show Table** dialog box automatically appears. If it does not appear, on the **Design** tab, in the **Relationships** group, click **Show Table**.

The **Show Table** dialog box displays all of the tables and queries in the database. To see only tables, click **Tables**.

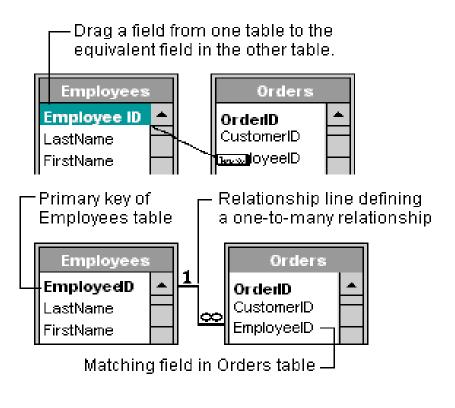
Drag a field (typically the primary key) from one table to the common field (the foreign key) in the other table

The Edit Relationships dialog box appears.

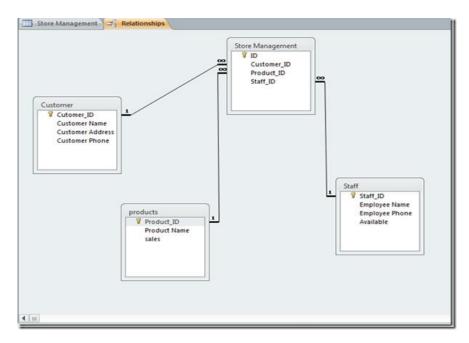
Edit Relati	onships	? 🗙
Table/Query: Customers	Related Table/Query:	ОК
ID	Customer ID	Cancel
Cascade Upda		Create <u>N</u> ew
Relationship Type:	One-To-Many	

- Verify that the field names shown are the common fields for the relationship. If a field name is incorrect, click on the field name and select the appropriate field from the list. To enforce referential integrity for this relationship, select the Enforce Referential Integrity check box. For more information about referential integrity, see the section Enforce
- Referential Integrity 6. Click **Create**.

Access draws a relationship line between the two tables. If you selected the **Enforce Referential Integrity** check box, the line appears thicker at each end. In addition, again only if you selected the **Enforce Referential Integrity** check box, the number **1** appears over the thick portion on one side of the relationship line, and the infinity symbol (∞) appears over the thick portion on the on the other side of the line, as shown in the following figure.



- **To create a one-to-one relationship**: Both of the common fields (typically the primary key and foreign key fields) must have a unique index. This means that the **Indexed** property for these fields should be set to **Yes (No Duplicates)**. If both fields have a unique index, Access creates a one-to-one relationship.
- To create a one-to-many relationship: The field on the one side (typically the primary key) of the relationship must have a unique index. This means that the **Indexed** property for this field should be set to **Yes (No Duplicates)**. The field on the many side should *not* have a unique index. It can have an index, but it must allow duplicates. This means that the **Indexed** property for this field should be set to either **No** or **Yes (Duplicates OK)**. When one field has a unique index, and the other does not, Access creates a one-to-many relationship.



Tip: When you create a relationship, you can view the related table as a subdatasheet of the primary table. Open the primary table and click the plus (+) in the far left column. The plus sign turns into a minus (-) sign. If the Insert Subdatasheet dialog box opens, click the table you want to view as a subdatasheet and then click OK. Access displays the subdatasheet each time you click the plus sign in the far left column. Click the minus sign to hide the subdatasheet.

Tip: After a relationship has been created between two tables, you must delete the relationship before you can make modifications to the fields on which the relationship is based.

To delete a relationship:

- 1. Click the line that connects the tables.
- 2. Press the Delete key.

Tip: When you create a lookup column, Access creates a relationship between the tables but does not enforce integrity constraints.

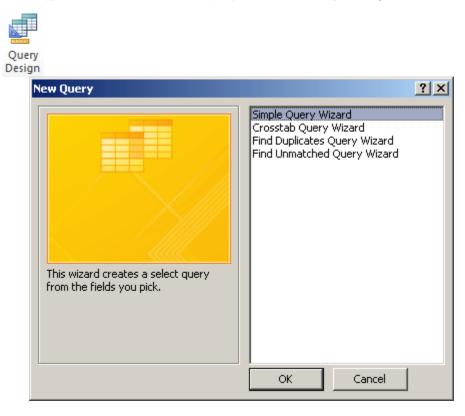
8.3 Working With Queries

Queries are an essential part of any database. They extract meaningful information from your database and answer key business questions. Queries are a way of **searching** for and **compiling** data from one or more tables. The real power of a relational database is in the ability to quickly **retrieve** and **analyse** your data by running a query. **Queries** allow you to **pull information** from one or more tables based on a set of search conditions you define.

Query Wizard

The Query Wizard offers the simplest approach to creating a query where in step by step you specify the data that the query will make available. The wizard presents the tables that are part of the database and you select which fields you need. Such a query is called a **Select Query**.

To use the Query Wizard, on the Ribbon, you can click the Create tab and, in the Queries section, click Query Wizard. This would display the New Query dialog box:



On the New Query dialog box, you can click Simple Query Wizard and click OK. The first page of the Simple Query Wizard expects you to choose the origin of the query as a table or an already created query.

Select the Available fields and place under Selected Fields by clicking the single arrow in case all the fields are required the double headed arrow can be clicked and click Next.

Simple Query Wizard	
	Which fields do you want in your query? You can choose from more than one table or query.
Tables/Queries	
Table: Company Assets	<u> </u>
<u>A</u> vailable Fields:	Selected Fields:
CompanyAssetID	 Category Make Model Date Acquired Purchase Price
Ca	ncel < Back Next > Finish

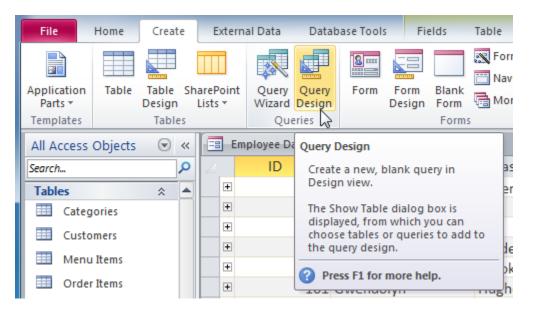
Give a desired name to store this query and click Finish.

Simple Query Wizard	
	What title do you want for your query? AssetsInventrory
	That's all the information the wizard needs to create your query. Do you want to open the query or modify the query's design? © Open the query to view information. © Modify the query design.
	Cancel < Back Next > Finish

Query Design

Query design consists of selecting the fields that would be part of a query. A query can be based on tables or on other queries. To create a query, you open the tables or queries on which you are going to base your query in Query Design view, and then use the options in Design view to create your query.

- To display a query in Design View, from the Navigation Pane, you can right-click a query and click Design View
- To start designing a new query, in the Queries section of the Create tab of the Ribbon, click Query Design
 - 1. Select the Create tab on the Ribbon and locate the Queries group.
 - 2. Select the Query Design command.



3. Access will switch to Query Design view. In the Show Table dialog box that appears, select the table you would like to run a query on. Click Add, then click Close

Tables Queries	Both			
Categories Customers Menu Items Order Items Orders Table Products Table Sales Unit				
		Add	Clos	e 1

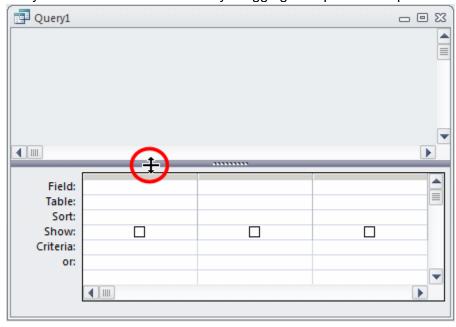
The Query Window

The Query window is presented like a regular window. If the database is set to show overlapped windows, its title bar displays its system button on the left section. This can be used to minimize, maximize, restore, move, resize, or close the window. Like all Microsoft Access window objects, the title bar displays a special menu when right-clicked:

Query1		<u>S</u> ave	
	2	<u>C</u> lose	
		<u>C</u> lose All	
		Design View	
	SQL	S <u>Q</u> L View	
Field:			
Table: Sort:			
Show:			
Criteria:			
or:			

The right section of the title bar displays the classic system buttons of a regular window.

In the top wide area of the Query window, the query displays an object (table(s), query (queries)) or a group of objects that was selected to create the query. The lower portion of the query displays boxes that would be used to perform various operations related to the query. The upper and the lower sections of the query window are separated by a splitter bar that you can use to resize them by dragging the splitter bar up or down:



Selecting the Columns

To create the fields for a query, you use the table(s) or query(queries) displayed in the upper section of the window. Once you have decided on the originating object(s), you can select which fields are relevant for your query:

- To select one field from the list, just click it
- To select many fields on the same range, you can click one of them, press and hold Shift. Then click one field on the other end of the desired range
- To select fields at random, click one of the desired fields, press and hold Ctrl; then click each one of the desired fields
- To select all fields, you can click the * line on the list of fields

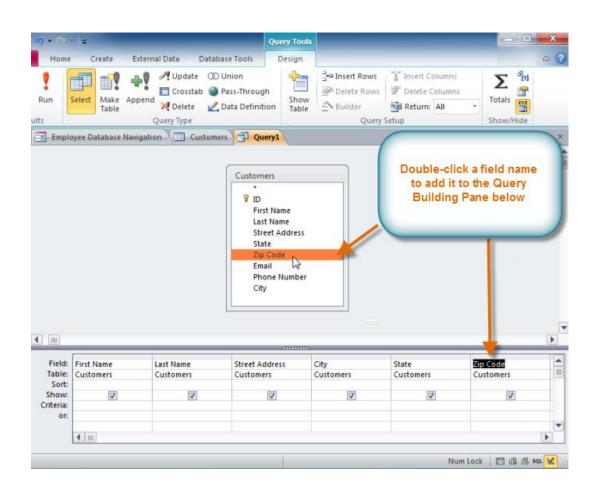
Add Columns

To make a field participate in a query, you have various options:

- Once you have made your selection on the list in the top part of the query window, you can drag it and drop it in the bottom section of the query window
- Instead of dragging a field or all fields, you can either double-click a field to add it to the query, or double-click the line with * to add all fields to the query
- In the bottom part of the query window, click an empty Field box to show a combo box. Then click the arrow of that combo box and select an item from the list:

Query1			-	0 23
	* * AssetID Asset Tag Asset Type Make Model Acquired Date Purchase Price Notes			
		<u>ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ</u>		•
Field:	×			
Table:	Assets.*			
Sort:	AssetID			
Show: Criteria:	Asset Tag Asset Type			_ 1
or:	Make Model			
	Acquired Date Purchase Price Notes			•

4. The selected table will appear as a small window in the **Object Relationship Pane**. In the table window, double-click the **field names** you would like to include in your query. They will be added to the **Design Grid** in the bottom part of the screen.



Executing a Query

In the Navigation Pane, a query is represented by an icon \blacksquare and a name.

Executing a query consists of viewing its results but the action or outcome may depend on the type of query. You then click the Run button to display the results. You can save queries for later use.

Run

To view the result of a query:

- If the query is currently closed, from the Navigation Pane:
 - ✓ You can double-click it
 - ✓ You can right-click it and click Open
- If the query is already opened and it is in Design View, on the Ribbon:
 - ✓ You can click the Run button
 - You can click the View button or you can click the arrow of the View button and click Datasheet View



Display All Records and All Fields

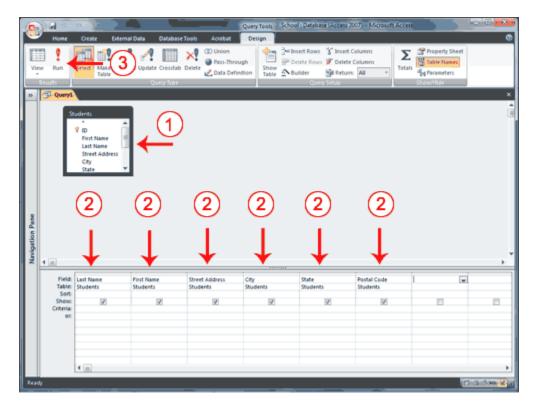
Each table has an option that allows you to display all of the fields and all of the records in a table. This option appears on the field line on the drop-down menu as the table name followed by a period and an asterisk (*tablename.**)

1. Click the down-arrow in the first field on the Field row and then select the *tablename*.* option. The table name appears on the table line.

Click the Run button. Access retrieves all of the fields and records for the table and displays them in Datasheet view.

Retrieve Columns

You can use an Access query to retrieve columns of data. On the Field line in Query Design view, choose the field name of each field you want to retrieve in the order you want to retrieve them.

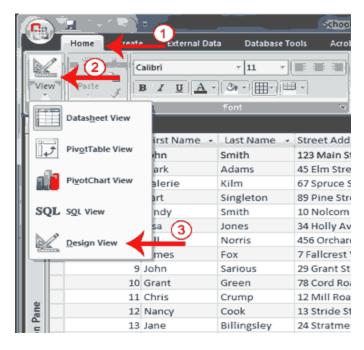


- 1. Open a table or query in Query Design view.
- 2. Choose the field names you want to retrieve in the order you want to retrieve them.
- 3. Click the Run button. Access retrieves the columns you chose.

Last Name 📼	First Name 👻	Street Address 🔹	City -	State -	Postal Code •
Smith	John	123 Main Street	Grand Rapid	PA	08971
Adams	Mark	45 Elm Street	Geno	DE	10777
Kilm	Valerie	67 Spruce Street	Holbrook	NJ	05589
Singleton	Bart	89 Pine Street	Morris	NJ	05645
Smith	Cindy	10 Nolcom Drive	Holbrook	NJ	05589
Jones	Lisa	34 Holly Avenue	Jackson	DE	10677
Norris	Bill	456 Orchard Ave	Menlo	PA	08577
Fox	James	7 Fallcrest Way	Falt	PA	08907
Sarious	John	29 Grant Street	Falt	PA	08907
Green	Grant	78 Cord Road	Notley	DE	10986
Crump	Chris	12 Mill Road	Newnez	NJ	05113
Cook	Nancy	13 Stride Street	Berry	PA	08045
Billingsley	Jane	24 Stratmere Lane	Grand Rapid	PA	08971
Harrison	George	967 Kingston Way	Boston	DE	10190
Morgan	Nancy	55 Echohill Road	London	PA	08892
Petro	Sally	9978 High Street	New Hanover	DE	10194
Lovelace	Jim	44 Andover Road	Kennedy	NJ	05260
Fine	Adam	923 Leon Road	Bradford	DE	10761
Kinkley	Grace	100 Warren Street	Holyyoke	NJ	05047
Richardson	Paul	21 Brown Street	Woodlane	PA	08397
Singleton	Mary	122 Berkshire Drive	Elberta	DE	10134

Change from Datasheet View to Query Design View

After you run a query, you can easily change back to Query Design view and make modifications to your query or create a new query.



Change to Query Design view

- 1. Activate the Home tab.
- 2. Click the down-arrow below View in the Views group. A menu appears.
- 3. Click Design View. Access changes to Query Design view. You can modify your query.

Tip: You can also click the Design button in the lower-right corner of the Access window to change to Design view.

Selecting a Column

• To select a field in the lower section of the view, click the tiny bar of the column header:

Query1				
As	sets			
	AssetID Asset Tag Asset Type Make Model Acquired Date Purchase Price Notes			
				•
Field:	AssetID	Asset Tag	Asset Type	
Table:	Assets	Assets	Assets	
Sort:				
Show: Criteria:				
or:				

The whole column will be selected

• To select a range of columns, click the column header of one at one end, press and hold Shift, then click the column header at the other end

Removing a Column from a Query

- To delete a column:
 - ✓ Once it is selected, you can press Delete
 - ✓ Right-click the column header and click Cut
- To delete a group of columns, select them and press Delete

Using Operators on Queries

• When performing data analysis, to use the operators on a query enter the expression in the Criteria box(es) that correspond(s) to the column(s)

When writing the expression, there are a few rules you should observe:

- Each operator must be written as indicated
- To include a letter, a character, or a string, type it between double-quotes. An example is "M". Another example would be "El Salvador". In some cases, if you forget to use the double-quotes, Microsoft Access would add them. In some circumstances, if you forget

to use the double-quotes, Microsoft Access would not add them and the expression may fail. Therefore, to be on the safe side, always add the quotes yourself

- If a date or time value is part of an expression, include it between two # symbols. An example would be #12/8/94#. Another example is #05/02/2004#. If you forget the # symbol, most of the time, Microsoft Access would not correct it and you may receive an error
- All built-in constants, True, False, NULL, etc, do not use quotes

🗗 Query1				
	VideoID Title Director CopyrightYear Rating Length Format			
Field:	Title	Director		
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos	Videos.* VideoID Title	
or:			Director CopyrightYear Rating Length Format	•

Using an Alias Name for a Column

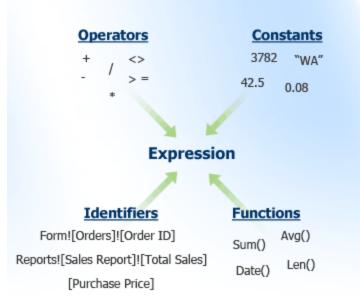
Right-click the column and click Properties. In the Property Sheet, click Caption and type the desired caption.

_				
Vie	deos	inte		
	*			
'	🖁 VideoID			
	Title			
	Director			
	CopyrightYear			
	Rating			
	Length			
	Format			
Field	Title	Disaster	Comministratives	
Field:		Director	CopyrightYear •	1
Table:	Title Videos	Director Videos	CopyrightYear <u>•</u> Videos	1
	Videos	Videos	Videos	
Table: Sort:				
Table: Sort: Show:	Videos	Videos	Videos	
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos Property Sheet	Videos	
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos Property Sheet Selection type: F	Videos Videos ield Properties	
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos Property Sheet	Videos Videos Videos	
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos Property Sheet Selection type: F	Videos Videos Videos	
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos Videos Property Sheet Selection type: F General Lookup	Videos Videos Videos	
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos Property Sheet Selection type: F General Lookup Description	Videos Videos Videos	
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos Property Sheet Selection type: F General Lookup Description Format Decimal Places Input Mask	Videos Videos ield Properties	
Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Videos	Videos Property Sheet Selection type: F General Lookup Description Format Decimal Places	Videos Videos Videos	

	Title 👻	Director 👻	© Year 👻	Minutes 👻
	General's Daughter (The)	Simon West	1999	116
	Wedding Crashers	David Dobkin		128
	Two for the Money	D. J. Caruso		123
	Memoirs of a Geisha	Bob Marshall	2006	145
	Her Alibi	Bruce Beresford		94
	M:i:III	J. J. Abrams	2006	125
	Godzilla	Roland Emmerich	1998	139
	Just Cause	Arne Glimcher	1999	102
	Wall Street		1987	126
	Michael Jackson Live in Bucharest	Andy Morahan	1992	122
	Outfoxed: Rupert Murdoch's War			
	Sentinel (The)	Clark Johnson	2006	108
	Last Castle (The)	Rod Lurie		126
	Five Deadly Venoms			
	Sneakers	Phil Alden Robinson	1992	133
	The Bridge on the River Kwai	David Lean	1957	
¥				

Overview of expressions

An expression is a combination of some or all of the following: built-in or user-defined functions, identifiers, operators, and constants. Each expression evaluates to a single value.



Operators in Access 2010

An operator is a sign or symbol that specifies the type of calculation to perform within an expression. There are mathematical, comparison, logical, and reference operators. Access supports a variety of operators, including arithmetic operators such as +, -, multiply (*), and divide (*I*), in addition to comparison operators for comparing values, text operators for concatenating text, and logical operators for determining true or false values.

Arithmetic Operators

You use the arithmetic operators to calculate a value from two or more numbers or to change the sign of a number from positive to negative or vice versa.

OPERATOR	PURPOSE	EXAMPLE
+	Sum two numbers.	[Subtotal]+[SalesT ax]
-	Find the difference between two numbers or indicate the negative value of a number.	[Price]-[Discount]

*	Multiply two numbers.	[Quantity]*[Price]
/	Divide the first number by the second number.	[Total]/[ItemCount]
١	Round both numbers to integers, divide the first number by the second number, and then truncate the result to an integer.	[Registered]\[Roo ms]
Mod	Divide the first number by the second number, and then return only the remainder.	[Registered] Mod [Rooms]
۸	Raise a number to the power of an exponent.	Number ^ Exponent

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

Comparison Operators

You use the comparison operators to compare values and return a result that is True, False, or Null. The constants 1 and 2 are used in the examples, but those constants can be replaced with identifiers, functions, or expressions.

OPERATOR	PURPOSE	EXAMPLE	RESULT
<	Returns True if the first value is less than the second value.	1 < 2	True
<=	Returns True if the first value is less than or equal to the second value.	1 <= 2	True
>	Returns True if the first value is greater than the second value.	1 > 2	Fals e
>=	Returns True if the first value is greater than or equal to the second value.	1 >= 2	Fals e
=	Returns True if the first value is equal to the second value.	1 = 2	Fals e
<>	Returns True if the first value is not equal to the second value.	1 <> 2	True

NOTE In all cases, if either the first value or the second value is null, the result is then also null. Because null represents an unknown value, the result of any comparison with a null value is also unknown.

Logical Operators

You use the logical operators to combine two Boolean values and return a true, false, or null result. Logical operators are also referred to as Boolean operators.

OPERATOR	PURPOSE	EXAMPLE	RESULT
And	Returns True when Expr1 and Expr2 are true.	1 < 2 And 3 < 4	True
Or	Returns True when either Expr1 or Expr2 is true.	1 < 2 Or 3 < 4	True
Eqv	Returns True when both Expr1 and Expr2 are true, or when both Expr1 and Expr2 are false.	1 < 2 Eqv 3 < 4	True
Not	Returns True when Expr is not true.	Not (1 < 2)	Fals e
Xor	Returns True when either Expr1 is true or Expr2 is true, but not both.	1 < 2 Xor 3 < 4	Fals e

Concatenation Operators

You use the concatenation operators to combine two text values into one.

OPERATOR	PURPOSE	EXAMPLE	RESULT
&	Combines two strings to form one string.	"road" & " map"	"road map"
		"road" & N ull	"road"
+	Combines two strings to form one string and propagates null values (if one value is Null, the entire expression evaluates to Null).	"road" + " map"	"road map"
		"road" + N ull	Null

Special Operators

You use the special operators to return a True or False result as described in the following table.

PURPOSE	EXAMPLE
Determines whether a value is Null or Not Null.	Field1 Is Not Null
Matches string values by using the wildcard operators ? and *.	Field1 Like "instruct*"
Determines whether a numeric or date value is found within a range.	Field1 Between 1 And 10 - OR - Field1 Between #07-01- 07# And #12-31-07#
Determines whether a value is found within a set of values.	Field1 In ("red","green","blue") - OR - Field1 In (1,5,7,9)
	Determines whether a value is Null or Not Null. Matches string values by using the wildcard operators ? and *. Determines whether a numeric or date value is found within a range. Determines whether a value is found within a set

Operators

Operators such as = (equal), <> (not equal), > (greater than), or < (less than) restrict the records you retrieve.

List of ope	erators		
Operator	Meaning	Field Type	Entry Format
=	Equal to	Chara cter Number Date	="DE" =5 = #2/16/88#
<>	Not equal to	Chara cter Number Date	<>"DE" <>5 <> #2/16/88#
>	Greater than	Chara cter Number Date	>"DE" >5 > #2/16/88#
>=	Greater than or equal to	Chara cter Number Date	>="DE" >=5 > = #2/16/88#
<	Less than	Chara cter Number	<"DE" <5 < #2/16/88#

		Date	
<=	Less	Chara	<="DE"
	than or equal to	cter Number Date	<=5 <= #2/16/88#
In	Equal to any item in a list	Chara cter Number Date	In("DE","NJ") In(5,9,17) In (#2/16/88#, #2/3/90#, #12/15/88#)
Not In	Not equal to any item in a list	Chara cter Number Date	Not In("DE", "NJ") Not In(5, 9, 17) Not In (#2/16/88#, #2/3/90#, #12/15/88#)
Between	Between two values, greater than or equal to one and less than or equal to the other	Chara cter Number Date	Between "C" And "F" Between 5 And 10 Between #1/1/88# And #12/31/88#
Not Between	Not between two values	Chara cter Number Date	Not Between "C" And "F" Not Between 5 And 10 Not Between #1/1/88# And #12/31/88#
Is Null	The value is missing from the field	Chara cter Number Date	Is Null Is Null Is Null
Is Not Null	The value is not missing from the field	Chara cter Number Date	Is Not Null Is Not Null Is Not Null
Like	Like a specified pattern. * means any series of characters. ? means any single character.	Chara cter Number Date	Like "S*" Like "1*" Not Applicable

Dr. MCR HRDIAP

Not Like	Not like	Chara	Like "S*"
	a specified	cter	Like "1*"
	pattern.	Number	Not Applicable
	* means	Date	
	any series		
	of		
	characters.		
	? means		
	many single		
	character.		

Logical Operators

To get specific records from the tables with certain conditions,. In these example details of employees having salary ranges from **4000 to 6000**. For this condition, we will be using AND logical operator and write the criteria as;

Т	able1		
	* Employee_ID Year of Service Salary		
<u>IIII</u>			
Field:	Employee_ID	Year of Service	Salary
Field: Table:	Employee_ID Table1	Year of Service Table1	
Field: Table: Sort:	Table1	Table1	Salary Table1
Field: Table: Sort: Show:		the first part of a second	Salary Table1
Field: Table: Sort:	Table1	Table1	Salary Table1

For applying this condition like Year of Service criteria, more than 2 years And less than 6 of service, under Design Query window, we will write this condition under Year of Service field as;

Т	able1		
	* Employee_ID Year of Service Salary		
-			
0			
Field:	Employee ID	Year of Service	
Field: Table:		Year of Service Table1	Salary Table1
Field: Table: Sort:	Table1	Table1	Salary Table1
Field: Table:	Table1	Contract of the second second	Salary

For inserting an *OR* condition, just enter number of Year in OR field. For instance we also want to show employees who worked for 2 years. For this, we will simply add 2 in OR field.

	-		
Field:	Employee_ID	Year of Service	Salary
Table:	Table1	Table1	Table1
Sort:			
Show:	1	1	1
riteria:	P.1-121	>3 And <6	and the second second
or:		2	11 31

Negating an Expression

To negate you can precede the string with NOT

The result would include all records that do not include the value that was set on the right side of **NOT**.

You can also use <> instead of **NOT**.

Query1						
Vic	leos					
	*					L
5	VideoID					
	Title					
	Director					
	CopyrightYea	ar 📗				
	Rating					
	Length					
	-					LIC.
Field:	Title	Director	CopyrightYear	Rating	Length	
Table:	Videos	Videos	Videos	Videos	Videos	
Sort:						
Show:						
				<> "PG-13"		
Criteria:				C2 10-15		
				0 10 15		
Criteria:						

Using Arithmetic Operators

An arithmetic operator can be used to create an expression that results in a calculation.

	neKeepers	
	*	
1	PayrolIID	
	EmployeeNumber	
	HourlySalary	
	DateWorked	
	TimeIn	
	TimeOut	
	TimeWorked	
]		
Field: Table:	Daily Salary: [HourlySalary]*[TimeWorked]	
Field: Table: Sort:	Daily Salary: [HourlySalary]*[TimeWorked]	
Field: Table: Sort: Show:		
Field: Table: Sort: Show: Triteria:	Daily Salary: [HourlySalary]*[TimeWorked]	
Field: Table: Sort: Show:	Daily Salary: [HourlySalary]*[TimeWorked]	

IN Operator

- When several "Or" conditions that apply to the same field as an alternative to typing values in many cells, or typing **Or** between each value in the same cell, you can use the **In**operator.
- In the **Criteria** row of the field you want to query, type **In**, and then type your criteria values. Separate values with commas, and surround the whole set of values with parentheses.
- When you press ENTER or click another cell to commit your changes, Access surrounds each condition with quotation marks, as shown in the picture.

CompanyName	Country	City
Customers	Customers	Custome
~		
	In (France, Belgium, Germany, Denmark)	
CompanyName	Country	City
CompanyName Customers	Country Customers	
		Customer
Customers	Customers	

Like Operator

- In a list of people one of them is named "Moore" or some of them are named "Moore" and you want to find the record(s) with that name, you would use **LIKE "Moore"**.
- If the value you want to find is a date, include it between two # signs as in LIKE #8/8/1993#.
- The most regular use of the LIKE is with strings. Example Name Starting with S Like "S*"
- To specify that you want the strings that start with any character from o to r followed by anything, you would use LIKE "[o-r]*":
- To find specific characters in a string, use the [] as the placeholder. Inside the square brackets, enter the characters separated by commas. An example would be LIKE "[a, h, o, y]*":
- Instead of using a range of characters, you may want to exclude the characters of a specific range. To negate the filter of a range of characters, you can precede the LIKE operation with the **NOT** operator.
- The * character on a **LIKE** operation is used to find many characters. If you want to find only one character, use the? Wildcard. **LIKE** "?i*" This would search for a string starting with any character containing i in the second place followed by any other characters.

Create a Query That Uses Two or More Tables

If you want to view data from two or more tables or queries, you can create a query that pulls the data from multiple tables or queries. The tables and queries from which you pull your data should have a relationship.

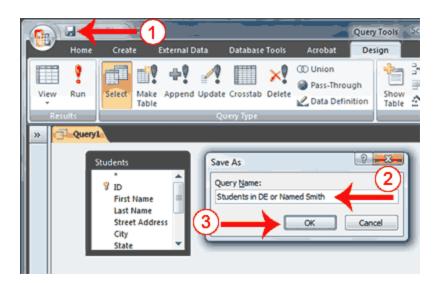
_							Insert Rows 3 Inse			
II	1	1	+! /!	Charles and	CD Union Pass-Th	rough 🔲 🙀	Delete Rows 🔮 Del	ete Columns	Loss fabre Planes	
*	Run	Select Make Table	Append Update		💒 Data De			turno Alli 🖂 Total	^{of} pg Parameters	
T	T veryt		9	акту Турк			Query Setup		Show, Hide	
t	- Carlo									
	Ô									
K	6)	Stude	ets			_				
L	~			1. P	ayments.					
L			Rudent ID First Name		Payment ID Student ID		\bigcirc			
			ast Name	1 1	Payment Date		. (1)			
					Amount Due					
			City Safe ¥		Payment Amo		<u> </u>			
L			itate 🔻	յլ			Ŭ			
				1 [Ŭ			
				1 [Ċ			
				1 [C			
				1 [C			
11	(A)									
11.	Field	Student ID	kate v		Payment Amo	Payment Date	Amount Due	Payment Amount	←(:	2)
1.	Field: Table: Sort:	Student ID Students	tate •	ts	Payment Amo	sunt	Payments	Payments	←(2)
	Field: Table:	Student ID	Last Na Studen	ts	Payment Amo	Payment Date Payment S			← (2)
11.	Field: Table: Sort: Show:	Student ID Students	Last Na Studen	ts ing	Payment Amo	Payment Date Payments Accending	Payments	Payments	← (2	2)
1	Field Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Student ID Students	Last Na Studen	ts ing	Payment Amo	Payment Date Payments Accending	Payments	Payments	← (2	2)
1.	Field Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Student ID Students	Last Na Studen	ts ing	Payment Amo	Payment Date Payments Accending	Payments	Payments	•	2)
	Field Table: Sort: Show: Criteria:	Student ID Students	Last Na Studen	ts ing	Payment Amo	Payment Date Payments Accending	Payments	Payments	•	2)

- 1. Open the tables and/or queries you want to use in Query Design view.
- 2. Choose the field names you want to retrieve in the order you want to retrieve them.
- 3. Choose the field names you want to sort by in the order you want to sort. Under the fields you want to sort by, choose Ascending or Descending.
- 4. Enter your selection criteria, if necessary (Not applicable in this example).
- 5. Deselect the Show button for columns you do not want to display (Not applicable in this example).
- 6. Click the Run button. Access retrieves the columns you chose and displays the rows in the order you specified.

1	Query1					
	Student ID +	Last Name •	First Name •	Payment Date •	Amount Due •	Payment Amount •
	5	Adams	Mark	1/20/2009	700	300
	2	Adams	Mark	2/16/2009	400	300
	3	Kilm	Valerie	1/13/2009	500	250
	3	Kilm	Valerie	2/28/2009	250	250
	1	Smith	John	2/15/2009	500	500
*	(New)					

Save a Query

After you create a query, you can save it. You can rerun a saved query at any time. If you change the data on which the saved query is based, you will see the changes when you rerun the query.



- 1. Click the Save button on the Quick Access toolbar. Access saves the query unless you are saving for the first time. If you are saving for the first time, the Save As dialog box appears.
- 2. Type the name you want to give your query.
- 3. Click OK. Access saves the query. You can now access the query by using the Navigation pane.

Tip: You can also save by right-clicking a query's tab and then selecting Save from the menu that appears. Access saves the query unless you are saving for the first time. If you are saving for the first time, the Save As dialog box appears. Type the name you want to give the query and then click OK. Access saves the query. You can now access the query by using the Navigation pane.

Tip: After you have saved a query, you can run it by opening the Navigation pane and then clicking the name of the query.

Modify a Query

Once created, a query can be modified. Simply open the query in Query Design view and make the changes. You can add columns, change the sort order, change the criteria, and make other changes.

In Query Design view, the Query Setup group offers several options that can assist you. Use the Insert Rows button to insert a row in the criteria area. Click anywhere in the row before which you want to insert a new row and then click the Insert Rows button.

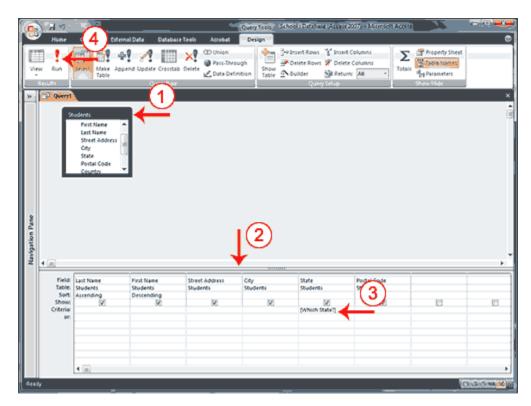
- Use the Insert Columns button insert a column. Click anywhere in the column before which you want to insert a column and then click the Insert Column button.
- Use the Delete Rows button it to delete a row in the criteria area. Click anywhere in the row you want to delete and then click the Delete Row button.

• Use the Delete Columns button ^{**} to delete a column. Click anywhere in the column

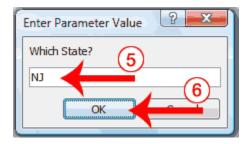
you want to delete and then click the Delete Column button

Parameter Query

To prompt users when a query runs, you can create a parameter query. You create a parameter query by enclosing a question in square brackets ([]). For example, if you want to create a parameter query that asks users which State they want to use from the Student's table, you would type [Which State?] on the Criteria line under the State column. When the query runs, Access will prompt the user for the answer to your question.



- 1. Open a table or query in Query Design view.
- 2. Create your query.
- 3. On the Criteria line, type the prompt within square brackets.
- 4. Click the Run button. Access prompts you.



- 5. Respond to the prompt.
- 6. Click OK. Access displays the results of your query in Datasheet view.

Last Name	First Name 👻	Street Address	 City 	-	State -	Postal Code
Crump	Chris	12 Mill Road	Newnez		NJ	05113
Kilm	Valerie	67 Spruce Street	Holbrook		NJ	05589
Kinkley	Grace	100 Warren Street	Holyyoke		NJ	05047
Lovelace	Jim	44 Andover Road	Kennedy		NJ	05260
Singleton	Bart	89 Pine Street	Morris		NJ	05645
Smith	Cindy	10 Nolcom Drive	Holbrook		NJ	05589

Note: If you want to make your user prompt more flexible, use one of the following formats.

Like "*" & [<i>Prompt</i>] & "*"	Returns all records that contain the value you enter. Example: If you enter ad , Access returns all records that include the sequence <i>ad</i> anywhere in the field.
Like "*" & [<i>Prompt</i>]	Returns all records that end with the value you enter. Example: If you enter S , Access returns all records that end with <i>S</i> .
Like [<i>Prompt</i>] & "*"	Returns all records that begin with the value you enter. Example: If you enter S , Access returns all records that begin with <i>S</i> .
> [Prompt]	Find all records with a value greater than the value you enter. Example: If you enter 5, Access returns all records that are greater than 5.
Note: You can also use < (less than) ,<= (less than or equal to) >=, >= (greater than or equal to), or <> (not equal)	

Action Queries

Append Query

Appending a record consists of adding a record to a table. An Append Query allows you to add records to an existing table but you do not create the records. They must be retrieved from one table and transferred to another table.

To start an Append Query, start a query in the Design View. In the Query Type section of

the Ribbon, click the Append button

You will be presented with a dialog box that expects you to either select the table to which you will add the records, or to specify the name of a new table that would receive the records. If you want to add the records to an existing table, you can select it from the combo box.

- 1. To execute the query, In the Navigation Pane, double-click Add New Cars to the Application
- 2. Read the strings on the message box:

Bethes	la Car Rental
	You are about to run an append query that will modify data in your table.
<u>_</u>	Are you sure you want to run this type of action query? For information on turning off confirmation messages for document deletions, click Help.
	Show Help >>
	Yes No Help

- 3. Then click Yes
- 4. Another message box will come up:

Bethesda	Car Rental
	You are about to append 6 row(s).
	Once you click Yes, you can't use the Undo command to reverse the changes. Are you sure you want to append the selected rows?
	Yes No

Click Yes

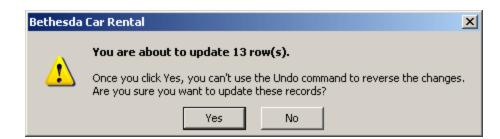
5. Close the query window

Update Query

Microsoft Access provides an action query named Update Query. An Update Query allows you to change the existing values of one or more columns of a table. An Update Query will make bulk changes to records in the record source.

- 1. On the **Design** tab, in the **Query Type** group, click **Update**.
- 2. Access adds the **Update to** row in the query design grid. Locate the field that contains the data that you want to change, and then type your expression (your change criteria) in the **Update to** row for that field.
- 3. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.
- 4. An alert message appears.
- 5. To run the query and update the data, click **Yes**.

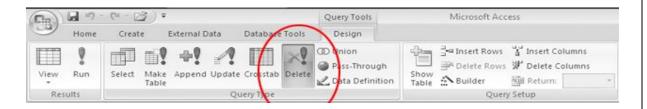
Select Ma Tal	ke Append Update Crosstab I Query Type	Delete Data Definition	
🚽 qryUpd		- = x	
	BOOKS V SBN Title PubID Price		
4		• •	
Field Table Update To Criteria	BOOKS Price*1.1		
or	4	•	
Access		ill and if u data in your table	x
You are about to run a	run this type of action que		ery, dick Help.
You are about to run a Are you sure you want to For information on how to	run this type of action que	ery?	ery, dick Help.



Delete Queries

A Delete Query deletes records from a single database table or database tables. If a condition is specified only that set of records are deleted .The delete query will work with a group of records that meet a specified criteria that you apply. You can use the delete query to remove all records or only records that meet the defined criteria.

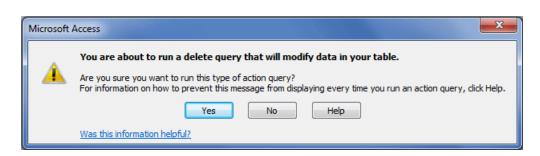
- 1. Click the **Create** tab.
- a. In the Ribbon, click Query Design.
- 2. When the **Show Table** window appears, click the desired Table Name.
- a. Then click the Add button.
- 3. Click the Close button.
- 4. In the Ribbon, click **Delete**.
- 5. In the field list of the table, click-and-drag the * field to the first column of the design grid.

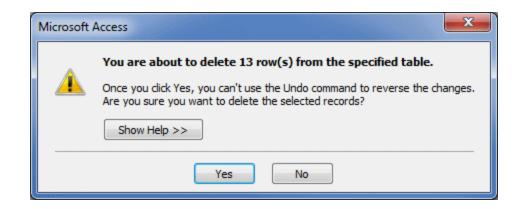


Query1		
En	nployees * First Name Last Name	
•		
Field: Table: Delete: Criteria: or:		
	<	

Add Criteria

- 1. In the column of the design grid, which needs to be conditioned click in the **Criteria** row.
- 2. Type: the conditional value
- 3. In the Ribbon, click **Run**.





Some More Examples on Queries

Open an existing query

If you are not familiar with the Navigation Pane, you may not know how to open a query that already exists. The Navigation Pane is a feature that replaces the Database Window from versions prior to Access 2007. You'll see the Navigation Pane along the left side of your screen.

To open any database object, including a query, you can double-click the object in the Navigation Pane.

Use the Northwind database to follow along with examples

Note Examples use a database that was created by using the Northwind 2010 database template.

- 1. Click the **File** tab, and then click **New**.
- 2. In the middle pane, under Available Templates, click Sample Templates, and then click Northwind.
- 3. In the right pane, review the name for the database file in the File Name box, and make any changes to the name. You can also browse for a different file location by clicking the folder icon.
- 4. Click Create.
- 5. Follow the directions on the **Northwind Traders** page (on the **Startup Screen** object tab) to open the database, and then close the Login Dialog window.

Look at a subset of the data in a table

Sometimes you may want to review all of the data from a table, but at other times, you may want to review only the data from certain fields, or you may want to review data only if certain fields meet certain criteria. To review some of the data in a table, you use a select query.

Suppose that you want to review a list of products and their prices. You can create a query that returns product and price information by using the following procedure:

- 1. Open the Northwind database that you previously set up by using these steps.
- 2. On the Create tab, in the Query group, click Query Design.
- 3. In the Show Table dialog box, on the Tables tab, double-click Products.
- 4. Close the **Show Table** dialog box.
- 5. In the Products table, double-click **Product Name** and **List Price** to add these fields to the query design grid.
- 6. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

The query runs, and then displays a list of products and their prices.

Review data from more than one table simultaneously

Tables in a well-designed database bear logical relationships to each other. These relationships exist on the basis of fields that the tables have in common. When you want to review data from related tables, you use a select query.

Suppose that you want to review orders for customers who live in a particular city. Data about orders and data about customers are stored in two tables in the same database. Each table has a Customer ID field, which forms the basis of a one-to-many relationship between the two tables. You can create a query that returns orders for customers in a particular city, for example, Las Vegas, by using the following procedure:

- 1. Open the Northwind database that you previously set up by using these steps.
- 2. On the **Create** tab, in the **Query** group, click **Query Design**.
- 3. In the Show Table dialog box, on the Tables tab, double-click Customers and Orders.
- 4. Close the Show Table dialog box.

Note the line, called a join, that connects the ID field in the Customers table and the Customer ID field in the Orders table. This line shows the relationship between the two tables.

- 5. In the Customers table, double-click **Company** and **City** to add these fields to the query design grid.
- 6. In the query design grid, in the City column, clear the check box in the Show row.
- 7. In the Criteria row of the City column, type Las Vegas.

Clearing the **Show** check box prevents the query from displaying the city in its results, and typing **Las Vegas** in the **Criteria** row specifies that you want to see only records where the value of the City field is Las Vegas. In this case, the query returns only the customers that are located in Las Vegas — Company L and Company AA.

Note that you do not have to display a field to use it with a criterion.

- 8. In the Orders table, double-click **Order ID** and **Order Date** to add these fields to the next two columns of the query design grid.
- 9. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

The query runs, and then displays a list of orders for customers in Las Vegas.

10. Press CTRL+S to save the query.

The **Save As** dialog box appears.

11. In the Query Name box, type Orders by City, and then click OK.

Ask variations of a question by using parameters

Sometimes you may want to run a query that is only slightly different from an existing query. You can change the original query to use your new criteria, but if you frequently want to run variations of a particular query, consider using a parameter query. When you run a parameter query, the query prompts you for field values, and then uses the values that you supply to create criteria for your query.

In the previous example, you created a query that returns orders for customers who are located in Las Vegas. You can modify the query to prompt you to specify the city each time that you run the query by using the following procedure:

- 1. Open the Northwind database that you previously set up by using these steps.
- 2. Press F11 to display the Navigation Pane.

Note This step is not necessary if the Navigation Pane is displayed.

- 3. In the Navigation Pane, right-click the query named **Orders by City** (that you created in the previous section), and then click **Design View** on the shortcut menu.
- 4. In the query design grid, in the **Criteria** row of the City column, delete **Las Vegas**, and then type **[For what city?]**.

The string **[For what city?]** is your parameter prompt. The square brackets indicate that you want the query to ask for input, and the text (in this case, **For what city?**) is the question that the parameter prompt displays.

Note Neither a period (.) nor an exclamation point (!) can be used as text in a parameter prompt.

- 5. Select the check box in the **Show** row of the City column, so that the query results will display the city.
- 6. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

The query prompts you to enter a value for City.

7. Type **New York**, and then press ENTER.

The query runs, and then displays orders for customers in New York.

But what if you don't know what values you can specify? To make your parameter more flexible, you can use wildcard characters as part of the prompt:

8. On the **Home** tab, in the **Views** group, click **View**, and then click **Design View**.

9. In the query design grid, in the **Criteria** row of the **City** column, type **Like** [For what city?]&"*".

In this parameter prompt, the **Like** keyword, the ampersand (&), and the asterisk (*) enclosed in quotation marks allow the user to type a combination of characters, including wildcard characters, to return a variety of results. For example, if the user types *, the query returns all cities; if the user types **L**, the query returns all cities that start with the letter "L;" and if the user types ***s***, the query returns all cities that contain the letter "s."

10. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

At the query prompt, type **New**, and then press ENTER.

11. The query runs, and then displays orders for customers in New York.

Specify parameter data types

You can also specify what type of data a parameter should accept. You can set the data type for any parameter, but it is especially important to set the data type for numeric, currency, or date/time data. When you specify the data type that a parameter should accept, users see a more helpful error message if they enter the wrong type of data, such as entering text when currency is expected.

Note If a parameter is set to accept text data, any input is interpreted as text, and no error message is displayed.

To specify the data type for parameters in a query, use the following procedure:

- 1. With the query open in Design view, on the **Design** tab, in the **Show/Hide** group, click **Parameters**.
- 2. In the **Query Parameters** dialog box, in the **Parameter** column, type the prompt for each parameter for which you want to specify the data type. Make sure that each parameter matches the prompt that you use in the **Criteria** row of the query design grid.
- 3. In the **Data Type** column, select the data type for each parameter.

Make calculations based on your data

Most of the time, you do not use tables to store calculated values that are based on data in the same database. For example, the Order Details table in Northwind 2007 does not store product subtotals, because the subtotal for any given product is calculated by using data that is stored in the Quantity, Unit Price, and Discount fields of the Order Details table.

In some cases, calculated values can become out-of-date, because the values that they are based on change. For example, you would not want to store someone's age in a table, because every year you would have to update the value; instead, you store the person's date of birth, and then use an expression in a query to calculate the person's age. Use the following procedure to create a query that calculates product subtotals based on data from the Order Details table.

- 1. Open the Northwind database that you previously set up by using these steps.
- 2. On the **Create** tab, in the **Query** group, click **Query Design**.
- 3. In the Show Table dialog box, on the Tables tab, double-click Order Details.
- 4. Close the **Show Table** dialog box.
- 5. In the Order Details table, double-click **Product ID** to add this field to the first column of the query design grid.
- 6. In the second column of the grid, right-click the **Field** row, and then click **Zoom** on the shortcut menu.
- 7. In the **Zoom** box, type or paste the following:

Subtotal: ([Quantity]*[Unit Price])-([Quantity]*[Unit Price]*[Discount])

Click OK.

This is the calculated field. The calculated field multiplies the quantity of each product by the unit price for that product, multiplies the quantity of each product by the unit price and discount for that product, and then subtracts the total discount from the total unit price.

8. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

The query runs, and then displays a list of products and subtotals, per order.

9. Press CTRL+S to save the query, and then name the query **Product Subtotals**.

Look at summarized or aggregate data

When you use tables to record transactions or store regularly occurring numeric data, it is useful to be able to review that data in aggregate, such as sums or averages.

Access allows you to review simple aggregate data in any datasheet by adding a Total row. A Total row is a row at the bottom of the datasheet that can display a running total or other aggregate value.

Note You cannot add a Total row to the datasheet of a Web query.

You can add a Total row to the Product Subtotals query that you created in the previous example by using the following procedure:

- 1. Run the Product Subtotals query, and leave the results open in Datasheet view.
- 2. On the Home tab, in the Records group, click Totals.

A new row appears at the bottom of the datasheet, with the word **Total** in the first column.

3. Click the cell in the last row of the datasheet named **Total**.

Note that an arrow appears in the cell.

4. Click the arrow to view the available aggregate functions.

Because the column contains text data, there are only two choices: **None** and **Count**.

5. Select Count.

The content of the cell changes from **Total** to a count of the column values.

6. Click the adjoining cell (the second column).

Note that an arrow appears in the cell.

7. Click the arrow, and then click **Sum**.

The field displays a sum of the column values.

8. Leave the query open in Datasheet view.

Create a totals query for more complex summaries

The Total row in a datasheet is very useful, but for more complex questions, you use a totals query. A totals query is a select query that allows you to group and summarize data. For example, suppose that you want to see total sales per product. In a totals query, you can use Sum, an aggregate function, to see total sales per product.

Note You cannot use aggregate functions in a Web query.

Use the following procedure to modify the Product Subtotals query to make it summarize product subtotals by product.

1. On the **Home** tab, in the **Views** group, click **View**, and then click **Design View**.

The Product Subtotals query opens in Design view.

2. On the **Design** tab, in the **Show/Hide** group, click **Totals**.

The **Totals** row is displayed in the query design grid.

Note Although they have similar names, the **Totals** row in the design grid and the **Total** row in a datasheet are not the same:

- You can group by field values by using the **Totals** row in the design grid.
- You can add a datasheet **Total** row to the results of a totals query.

- When you use the **Totals** row in the design grid, you must choose an aggregate function for each field. If you do not want to perform a calculation on a field, you can group by the field.
- 3. In the second column of the design grid, in the **Total** row, select **Sum** from the dropdown list.
- 4. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

The query runs, and then displays a list of products with subtotals.

5. Press CTRL+S to save the query. Leave the query open.

Create a crosstab query to add another level of grouping

Now suppose that you want to review product subtotals, but you also want to aggregate by month, so that each row shows subtotals for a product, and each column shows product subtotals for a month. To show subtotals for a product and to show product subtotals for a month, use a crosstab query.

Note A crosstab query cannot be displayed in a web browser.

You can modify the Product Subtotals query again so that the query returns rows of product subtotals and columns of monthly subtotals.

- 1. On the Home tab, in the Views group, click View, and then click Design View.
- 2. In the Query Setup group, click Show Table.
- 3. In the Show Table dialog box, double-click Orders, and then click Close.
- 4. On the **Design** tab, in the **Query Type** group, click **Crosstab**.

In the design grid, the **Show** row is hidden, and the **Crosstab** row is displayed.

- 5. In the third column of the design grid, right-click the **Field** row, and then click **Zoom** on the shortcut menu. The **Zoom** box opens.
- 6. In the **Zoom** box, type or paste the following:

Month: "Month " & DatePart("m", [Order Date])

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. In the **Crosstab** row, select the following values from the drop-down list: **Row Heading**for the first column, **Value** for the second column, and **Column Heading** for the third column.
- 9. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

The query runs, and then displays product subtotals, aggregated by month.

10. Press CTRL+S to save the query.

Create a new table by using data from other tables

You can use a make-table query to create a new table from data that is stored in other tables.

Note A make-table query cannot be run in a web browser.

For example, suppose that you want to send data for Chicago orders to a Chicago business partner who uses Access to prepare reports. Instead of sending all your order data, you want to restrict the data that you send to data specific to Chicago orders.

You can build a select query that contains Chicago order data, and then use the select query to create the new table by using the following procedure:

- 1. Open the Northwind database that you previously set up by using these steps.
- 2. To run a make-table query, you may need to enable the database content by using the Message Bar, which appears beneath the Ribbon if the database is untrusted when you open it.

Note If your database is in a trusted location, the Message Bar does not appear and enabling the content is unnecessary.

- 3. Close the Login Dialog form.
- 4. On the **Create** tab, in the **Query** group, click **Query Design**.
- 5. In the **Show Table** dialog box, double-click **Order Details** and **Orders**.
- 6. Close the **Show Table** dialog box.
- 7. In the **Orders** table, double-click **Customer ID** and **Ship City** to add these fields to the design grid.
- 8. In the Order Details table, double-click Order ID, Product ID, Quantity, Unit Price, and Discount to add these fields to the design grid.
- 9. In the **Ship City** column of the design grid, clear the box in the **Show** row. In the **Criteria** row, type **'Chicago'** (include the single quotation marks).

Verify the query results before you use them to create the table.

- 10. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.
- 11. Press CTRL+S to save the query.

The **Save As** dialog box appears.

- 12. In the Query Name box, type Chicago Orders Query, and then click OK.
- 13. On the Home tab, in the Views group, click View, and then click Design View.
- 14. On the **Design** tab, in the **Query Type** group, click **Make Table**.

The **Make Table** dialog box appears.

- 15. In the **Make Table** dialog box, in the **Table Name** box, type **Chicago Orders**, and then click **OK**.
- 16. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.
- 17. In the confirmation dialog box, click **Yes** to confirm.

The new table is created, and the table appears in the Navigation Pane.

Note If there is already a table that has the name that you specified, that table is deleted before the query runs.

18. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

Because the Chicago Orders table exists, a warning dialog box appears.

19. Click **No** to cancel the action and to dismiss the dialog box.

Add data to a table by using data from other tables

You can use an append query to retrieve data from one or more tables and add that data to another table.

Note An append query cannot be run in a web browser.

Suppose that you created a table to share with a Chicago business associate, but you realize that the associate also works with clients in the Milwaukee area. You want to add rows that contain Milwaukee area data to the table before you share the table with your associate.

You can add Milwaukee area data to the Chicago Orders table that you created in the previous example by using the following procedure:

- 1. Open the query named "Chicago Orders Query" in Design view.
- 2. On the **Design** tab, in the **Query Type** group, click **Append**. The **Append** dialog box opens.
- 3. In the **Append** dialog box, click the arrow in the **Table Name** box, and then select **Chicago Orders** from the drop-down list.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The **Append** dialog box closes. In the design grid, the **Show** row disappears, and the **Append To** row appears.

- 5. In the design grid, in the **Criteria** row of the Ship City column, delete 'Chicago', and then type **'Milwaukee'**.
- 6. In the **Append To** row, select the appropriate field for each column.

In this example, the **Append To** row values should match the **Field** row values, but that is not required for append queries to work.

7. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

Note While running a query that returns a large amount of data you might get an error message indicating that you will not be able to undo the query. Try increasing the limit on the memory segment to 3MB to allow the query to go through.

Change data in an automated fashion

You can use an update query to change the data in your tables, and you can use an update query to enter criteria to specify which rows should be updated. An update query provides you an opportunity to review the updated data before you perform the update.

Important An action query cannot be undone. You should consider making a backup of any tables that you will update by using an update query.

Note An update query cannot be run in a web browser.

In the previous example, you appended rows to the Chicago Orders table. In the Chicago Orders table, the Product ID field shows the numeric Product ID. To make the data more useful for reports, you may want to replace the product IDs with product names. To replace the product IDs, you must first change the data type of the Product ID field of the Chicago Orders table from Number to Text, so that the Product ID field can accept product names.

You can update the values in the Chicago Orders table by using the following procedure:

- 1. Open the Chicago Orders table in Design view.
- 2. In the Product ID row, change the Data Type from **Number** to **Text**.
- 3. Save and close the Chicago Orders table.
- 4. On the **Create** tab, in the **Query** group, click **Query Design**.
- 5. In the Show Table dialog box, double-click Chicago Orders and Products.
- 6. Close the **Show Table** dialog box.
- 7. On the **Design** tab, in the **Query Type** group, click **Update**.

In the design grid, the **Sort** and **Show** rows disappear, and the **Update To** row appears.

- 8. In the Chicago Orders table, double-click Product ID to add this field to the design grid.
- 9. In the design grid, in the **Update To** row of the **Product ID** column, type or paste the following:

[Products].[Product Name]

Tip You can use an update query to delete field values by using an empty string ("") or NULL in the **Update To** row.

10. In the **Criteria** row, type or paste the following:

[Product ID] Like ([Products].[ID])

The **Like** keyword is necessary because the fields that you are comparing contain different data types (Product ID is text data, ID is numeric data).

11. You can review which values will be changed by an update query by viewing the query in Datasheet view.

On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **View**, and then click **Datasheet View**.

The query returns a list of Product IDs that will be updated.

12. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

When you open the Chicago Orders table, you will see that the numeric values in the Product ID field have been replaced by the product names from the Products table.

Delete data in an automated fashion

You can use a delete query to delete data from your tables, and you can use a delete query to enter criteria to specify which rows should be deleted. A delete query provides you an opportunity to review the rows that will be deleted before you perform the deletion.

Note A delete query cannot be run in a web browser.

Suppose that you are preparing to send the Chicago Orders table (updated in the previous example) to your Chicago business associate, and you notice that some of the rows contain a number of empty fields. You would like to remove these rows that contain empty fields before you send the table. You could just open the table and delete the rows manually, but you might find it helpful to use a delete query if there are more than a few rows that you want to delete and you have clear criteria for which rows should be deleted.

You can use a query to delete rows in the Chicago Orders table that do not have a value for Order ID by using the following procedure:

- 1. On the **Create** tab, in the **Query** group, click **Query Design**.
- 2. In the **Show Table** dialog box, double-click **Chicago Orders**.
- 3. Close the **Show Table** dialog box.
- 4. On the **Design** tab, in the **Query Type** group, click **Delete**.

In the design grid, the **Sort** and **Show** rows disappear, and the **Delete** row appears.

- 5. In the **Chicago Orders** table, double-click **Order ID** to add it to the grid.
- 6. In the design grid, in the Criteria row of the Order ID column, type Is Null.
- 7. On the **Design** tab, in the **Results** group, click **Run**.

8.4 Forms Creating And Reports

Access forms are much like paper forms: you can use them to enter, edit, or display data. They are based on tables. When using a form, you can choose the format, the arrangement, and which fields you want to display. This lesson teaches you how to create forms. A form in Microsoft Access is an object that allows users to easily add and view data in a table

- 1. In the Navigation Pane, select the table you would like to use to create a form
- 2. Select the Create tab on the Ribbon and locate the Forms group. Click

the Form command.

	• • • • • • • •			
File	Home Create	External Data	Database Tool	5
Application Parts + Templates	Table Table Sh Design Tables	A REAL MARKED		Form Blank Form Form Form Form Form Forms
All Access	Objects		Form	
Search		Q		te a form that lets you enter
Tables		*	infor time.	mation for one record at a
Categ	gories			ess F1 for more help.
Custo	omers			ess i 1 for more nelp.

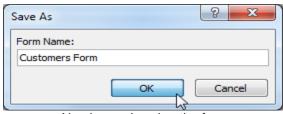
Using the Form command to create a form from the Customers table

3. Your form will be created and opened in **Layout View**.

	stome				
ID		1			
First Nam	e	Tracey			
Last Nam		Beckham			
Street Add	ress	7 East Wal	ker Dr.		
State		NC			
Zip Code		27612			
Email		beck@ema	il.com		
Phone Nu	mber	919-555-23	114		
City		Raleigh			
Add to Ma	iling List?				
4	D •		Pre Order •	Notes	+ Pickup Date +
æ	38	Yes			12/24/2010
*	(New)	No	No		

The new form

4. To **save** the form, click the **Save** command on the **Quick Access Toolbar**. When prompted, type a **name** for the form and then click **OK**.



Naming and saving the form

You can use the Navigation bars to move through the records on a form.

1	2 3 4 5 6 5 4 5 5 6 5 5 6 5 5 6 5 6 5 6 5 6 5 6 5 6 5
	Go to First Record
	Go to Previous Record
	The Current Record
	Go to Next Record
	Go to Last Record
	Create a New (Blank) Record

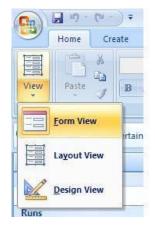
Form Views

A view is a way of looking at an Access object. Forms have three views: Form view, Layout view, and Design view. You can enter, edit, and view data in Form view. You can modify a form in Layout view or Design view. In Layout view, you can see your data, and the form you see closely resembles what your form will look like when you view it in Form view. You can make most, but not all, changes to your form in Layout view. Design view displays the structure of your form. In this view you cannot see the underlying data, but you can perform some tasks in Design view that you cannot perform in Layout view.

Change the view

- 1. Open the form.
- 2. Activate the Format tab.
- 3. Click the down-arrow under the View button. A menu appears.
- 4. Click the view you want.

Dr. MCR HRDIAP



Create Form with a Wizard

The Form Wizard found in Microsoft Access makes basic form creation fast and simple. .



In the first step of the Form wizard, we need to specify the fields from the Customer table that will appear on the form. In this case, we want all of the fields to appear. Move each of the fields from the Available Fields side over to the Selected Fields side as in the following figure. Then click on the Next button.

Form Wizard	Which fields do you want on your form? You can choose from more than one table or query.
Tables/Queries	
Table: Customer	×
<u>A</u> vailable Fields:	Selected Fields:
	> CustomerID FirstName StreetAddress Clty State C Zp
Ca	ncel < Back Next > Einish

Forms can have several different layouts or arrangement of the labels and fields on the screen.

• Columnar - Places the labels to the left of each field. This is similar to a paper form. This layout is suitable for viewing data one record at a time.

- Tabular Places the field labels at the top of the screen and the records are displayed below. This is similar to how a spreadsheet would display the data and is suitable for displaying multiple records of data at a time.
- Datasheet The data appears in the same fashion as when viewing or adding data to a table.
- Justified Places the labels above each field with the fields spread out on the form. This is suitable for viewing a single record at a time as with the columnar layout..

Form Wizard What layout would you like for your form?	 Columnar Tabular Datasheet Justified
Cancel	< Back Next > Finish

As a final step, give this new form the name: CustomerDataEntry and then click on the Finish button as shown below:

Form Wizard	
	What title do you want for your form? CustomerDataEntry That's all the information the wizard needs to create your form. Do you want to open the form or modify the form's design? O gpen the form to view or enter information. O Modify the form's design.
(Cancel < Back Next > Finish

The new form will be created by the wizard and then opened. It appears as in the figure below:

	handele - Database (Assess 2007) - Missand As	
	bankdb : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Ac	
Home Create	External Data Database Tools Acrobat	0
View Views Clipboard 5	U 手 三 目 Pont 「 Rich Text Single County of the second se	Filter → Find → Find
All Tables 💿 «	CustomerDataEntry	×
Customer Customer : Table	CustomerDataEntry	
🚽 Accounts Summary Qu		
🗐 Customer Accounts Qu		
Customer Address	CustomerID 1001	
CustomerDataEntry	FirstName Joseph	
Accounts	LastName Smith	
Accounts : Table	StreetAddress 123 Lexington	
Accounts Query	City Smithville	
Customer Accounts Qu	State KY	
	Zip 91232	
	Record: Id 4 1 of 4 + H H2 K No Filter Search	
The unique identifier for a custo	ner	

Creating Reports

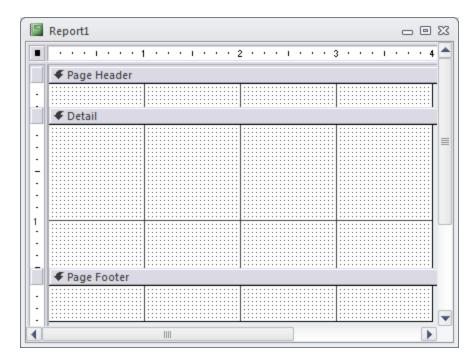
Reports organize and summarize data for viewing online or for printing. A detail report displays all of the selected records. You can include summary data such as totals, counts, and percentages in a detail report. A summary report does not list the selected records but instead summarizes the data and presents totals, counts, percentages, or other summary data only. Access has several report generation tools that you can use to create both detail and summary reports quickly.

Views of a Report

Design View

- From the Navigation Pane, you can right-click the report and click Design View
- If the report is already opened, in the Views section of the Ribbon, you can click the arrow button under View and click Design View
- If the report is already opened, you can right-click its tab or its title bar and click Design View

In the Design View of a report, you can add, position, format, configure, and manipulate the necessary controls. The Design View is equipped with one or more sections. The primary sections are the Page Header, the Detail, and the Page Footer:



When a report is in Design View, the Ribbon is equipped with a Controls section in its Design tab. You can use those controls to populate your report. You can also select objects from the Field List and add them to the report.

Print Preview

To have an idea of what a report would look like on a printed piece of paper, you can display it in what is referred to as Print Preview. To do this:

- If you have created a report using the Report Wizard, it would automatically display in Print Preview
- In the Navigation Pane, you can right-click a report and click Print Preview
- If the report is already opened, you can right-click its tab or its title bar and click Print Preview

When a report appears in Print Preview, the Ribbon is made of only one tab.

To appear realistic, a report in print preview appears as a piece of paper with margins. Its body is filled with the data that would be printed.

Employee #	First Name	Last Name	Hourly Salary
938-749	Jeannette	Lamott	20.05
594-875	Paul	Motto	14.85
973-047	James	Watts	12.85
740-357	Laurentine	Sachs	12.95
242-904	Nicholas	Simeon	16.25

The right side and the bottom-right side display a scroll bar each.

After using the Print Preview, to close it, in the Close Preview section of the Ribbon, you can click the Close Print Preview button. This would display the report in the view it previously had.



Report View

The Report View shows a report with its controls and the items in its sections but it does not show the margins:

Employee #	[£] FirstName	LastName	Hourly Salary	
938-749	Jeannette	Lamott	20.05	
594-875	Paul	Motto	14.85	
973-047	James	Watts	12.85	
740-357	Laurentine	Sachs	12.95	

Unlike the Print Preview, the Report View does not distinguish where a section starts and where it ends.

Layout View

The Layout View of a report appears as a drawing board. It shows its title bar and its system buttons. In its body, it displays three dotted lines that represent the top section and the margins:

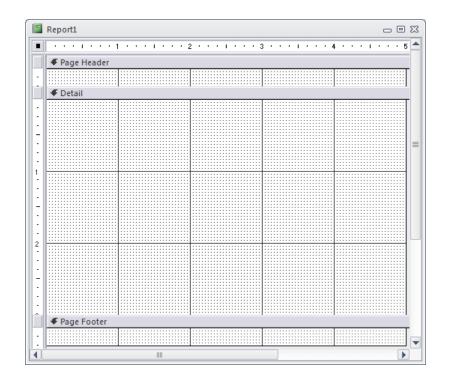
Employee #	≠ FirstName	LastName	Hourly Salary	
938-749	Jeannette	Lamott	20.05	
594-875	Paul	Motto	14.85	
973-047	James	Watts	12.85	
740-357	Laurentine	Sachs	12.95	

Sections of a Report

Page Header and the Page Footer Sections

When a piece of paper prints, it is made of a top section, a body, and a bottom section. To support this, a report can be equipped with a Page Header that represents the top part, a Detail section that represents the body of the report, and a Page Footer section that represents the bottom part.

If you create a report using either the Blank Report or the Report Design options of the Reports section of the Ribbon, the report would be equipped with a Page Header and a Page Footer sections:

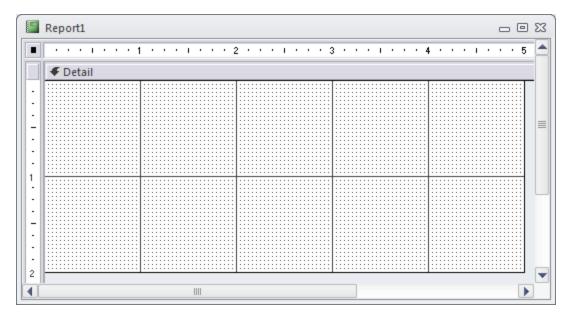


The Page Header represents the top section of the printed paper. Therefore, when designing a report, put in the Page Header the objects you want to display on each top part of the printed paper.

Because the Page Footer represents the bottom part of each printed page, you can put on it the object(s) that would display on each page. You can use it to display the date the report is being printed.

Detail Section

The most fundamental part of a report is the Detail section, which holds the most controls of a report. If you create a report using one of the options from the Reports section of the Create tab of the Ribbon, the report would come equipped with various sections. To have only the Detail section, you can right-click the report and click the option of those sections to remove them. You may end up with only the Detail section.

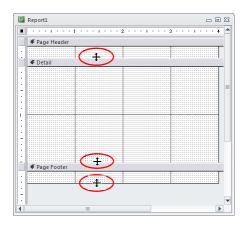


You can then equip it with the desired controls.

Size of a Report

A report has a size, which is the combination of its width and its height. When it comes to the height, each section has and controls its own vertical measure.

• You can drag up or down the bottom border of the bar of the next section

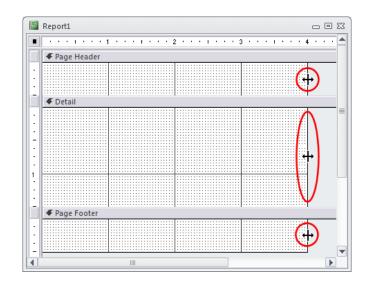


• You can access the Property Sheet of that section and change the value of the **Height** property

The height that a report displays in Design View is the total height of its sections.

When it comes to the width of a report, all sections use the same measure. The width that a report shows in Design View is the common width of its sections. Therefore, to specify the width of a report:

• You can drag left or right the right border of any section



 You can access the Property Sheet of the form and change the value of the Width property

To change both the height and the width of the report:

• You can drag left, up, right, or down the bottom-right corner of the lowest section

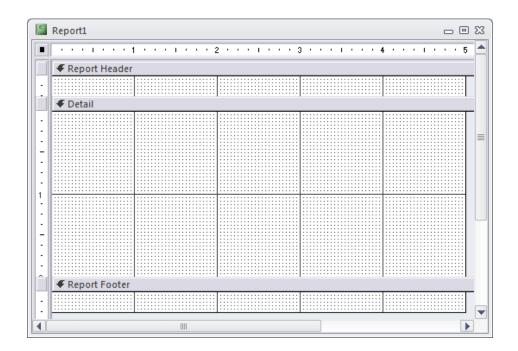
C De se liter des		
F Page Header	1	
_		
🗲 Detail		
Page Footer		
		 ·····

You can access the Property Sheet of the report then change the values of both the Height and the Width fields

Report Header and the Report Footer

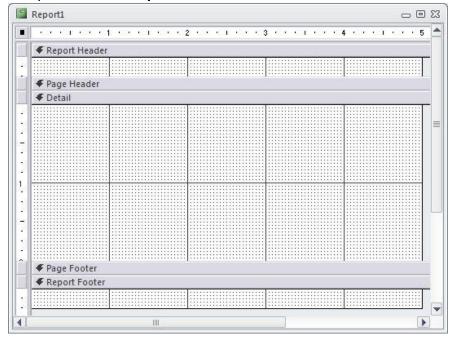
The report is the primary object used to print the data of a database.

To support the cover and the back page, the report can be equipped with two other sections: The Report Header and the Report Footer sections



If you create a report using either the Report or the Report Wizard options of the Reports section of the Ribbon, the report would be equipped with a Report Header and a Report Footer sections. If you have a report that doesn't have these sections and you want to add

them, right-click the report and click Report Header/Footer



Display When Section

After adding a section to a report, the section would show in Design View and its contents would appear in the other views. If you want, you can hide the section in either the Design View or the other views. This characteristic is controlled by the **Display When** enumerated property. To apply it, display the report in Design View and access the Property Sheet of the section on which you want to control this characteristic. Click either the Format or the All tab.

The **Display When** property has three options:

- **Always**: This is the default value of the property. It indicates that the section will display in Design View and its contents would appear in all views
- **Print Only**: The section will appear in Design View and Print Preview only, not in Report View or Layout View

		2	1.1.1	3		1.1		• 4
		:						
Gender Header		: ::::::::						:::p
·····								
Gender:	Ce	nder						
First	Vame		Las	t Nai	ne		1	
			_					
								::::::
First	ame		Las	tNan	ie			
		: ::::::::						
Property Sheet							•	×
Property Sheet Selection type: Section							-	×
		.					•	×
Selection type: Section Detail	1 au - 1						•	×
Selection type: Section Detail Format Data Event		All j					•	×
Selection type: Section Detail Format Data Event Auto Height	No	All					•	×
Selection type: Section Detail Format Data Auto Height Can Grow	No No	All					•	×
Selection type: Section Detail Format Data Event Auto Height Can Grow Can Shrink	No No No							×
Selection type: Section Detail Format Data Event Auto Height Can Grow Can Shrink Display When	No No No Prin	All tonly					• •	×
Selection type: Section Detail Format Data Event Auto Height Can Grow Can Shrink Display When Keep Together	No No No Prin Yes	t Only						×
Selection type: Section Detail Format Data Event Auto Height Can Grow Can Shrink Display When	No No No Prin	t Only						×

Report View

Report1		
Gender:		
	First Name	Last Name
Gender:	Fe	emale
	First Name	Last Name
Gender:	М	ale
	First Name	Last Name

Print Preview

Gender:	Female	,
	First Name	Last Name
	Sherryl	Ashburn
	Catherine	Chang
	Jeannette	West
	Antoinette	Clarek
	Suzie	Hoak
Gender:	Male	
	First Name	Last Name
	Nehemiah	Dean
	Koko	Domba
	Sébastien	Porter
i(No Filter	

Screen Only: The section will appear in Design View, in Report View, and in Layout View, but not in Print Preview

Use the Report Button

The Report button creates a simple report that lists the records in the selected table or query in a columnar format.

To use the Report button:

(a) (b) (b) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c	School : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access	
Home Create	-13 One food Accost	e
Table Table SharePoint Table Templates - Lists - Design	Form Spit Multiple Bank Form Form Form Rest With Antiper Water With Content Press Form Rest With Content Press Pre	
Tables	Forms Reports Other	
All Access Objects 💿 « Tables 8 Queries 8		
Temployee Salaries	2	

- 1. Open the Navigation pane.
- 2. Click the table or query on which you want to base your report.
- 3. Activate the Create tab.
- 4. Click the Report button in the Reports group. Access creates your report and displays your report in Layout view. You can modify the report.

a) 🖪 🔿 🐨 🕯	School : Ostabase (Access 2	007) - Microsoft Ac <u>Report Layout Fools</u>		
Home Create	External Data Databas	re Tools Acrobat Format Arrange	Page Setup	
	- (Chin 199.85	& Sort		Autofernat
ill Access Objects 💿 «	Employee Salaries			
Tables 8 Querles 8 D Employee Salaries	Emj	oloyee Salaries		Tuesday, March 10, 2009 1:10:31 PM
Reports ¥	Last Name	First Name	Salary	
	Applebee	Joe	75,000.00	
	French	Tim	30,000.00	
	Jordan	Jen	86,000.00	
	Selge	Tam	95,000.00	
	Logan	Martin	76,000.00	
	Cortez	Nadia	40,000.00	
	Freedman	Jon	55,000.00	
	Siegel	Ben	20,000.00	
	Johnson	Mitchell	77,000.00	
	Norton	Tom	77,000.00	
	Sanchez	Barbara	98,000.00	
	Williams	Linda	78,000.00	
	Jones	Pamela	32,000.00	
	Franklin	Janet	45,000.00	
	Thompson	Philip	106,000.00	
	Siegel	Joy	75,000.00	
	Taylor	George	150,000.00	
ayout View	Nixon	Len	65,000.00	1000

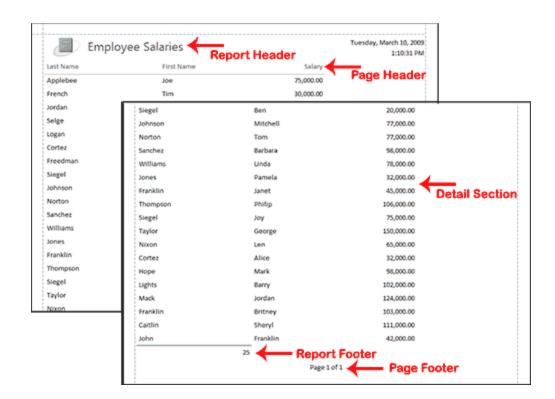
Tip: After you create a report, you can save it.

- 1. Click the Save button on the Quick Access toolbar. Access saves the report unless you are saving for the first time. If you are saving for the first time, the Save As dialog box appears.
- 2. Type the name you want to give your report.
- 3. Click OK. Access saves the report. You can now access the report by using the Navigation pane.

As with other objects, you can also save a report by right-clicking the reports tab and selecting Save. Saved reports appear in the Navigation pane.

Sections of a Report **Report Header** Appears at the top of the first page and displays the report title. Page Header Appears at the top of every page and displays the headings (field labels) for each column. Page Footer Appears at the bottom of every page and displays the page number and total number of pages. **Detail Section** Appears between the page header and page footer and displays the records from the table or query. Report Footer This section is optional. Appears on the last page of the report and displays summary information such as grand totals.

Tip: Reports created by using the Report button are plain and simple.



Use the Report Wizard

The Report Wizard provides you with more flexibility than you get by using the Report button. You can choose the tables and fields, group the data, sort the data, summarize the data, choose a layout and orientation, apply a style, and title your report.

Create a report by using the Report Wizard:

Open the Report Wizard

	B 9.0	(•) = .	4				School : Data	base (Acce	ss 2007) -	Microsoft Access				
•	Home	Create		oota	Databa	ase Tools	Acrobat							
Table	Table Templates	SharePoint Lists *	Table Design	1) Form	Split Form	Multiple Bems	ProtChart Blank Form More Forms	For Design	Report	🛃 Labels 🔄 Blank Report 💐 Report Wizard	Report Design	Query Wizard	Query Design	Macro

- 1. Activate the Create tab.
- 2. Click Report Wizard in the Reports group. The Report Wizard appears.

Select tables, queries and fields

When using the Report Wizard, you can use fields from multiple tables and/or queries if the tables/queries have a relationship.

Report Wizard		
		Which fields do you want on your report? You can choose from more than one table or query.
Tables/Queries		
Table: Employees		
<u>Available Fields:</u>		Selected Fields:
Sex Street Address City State Postal Code Department		Department ID Last Name First Name Salary
Date of Birth	Ca	ncel 2 < Back Next > Finish

- 1. Click the down-arrow next to the Table/Queries field and then click the table from which you want to select fields.
- 2. Click a field and then click the single-right arrow to select a single field, click the doubleright arrows to select all fields, click a field and then click the single-left arrow to deselect a single field, or click the double-left arrow to deselect all fields.
- 3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each table from which you want to select fields.
- 4. Click Next. The Report Wizard moves to the next page.

Group

When using the Report Wizard, you can group data. Grouping puts all of the values in a field into a group based on the field's value. For example, if your data is grouped by the Department field and the records in the Department field have values such as Administration, Computer Science, and English. Access will group all of the data for the Administration department together, all of the data for the Computer Science department together, and all of the data for the English department together.

Report Wizard	
How do you want to view your data?	Department
by Departments by Employees	10, cost Name, First Name, Salary
Show me more information	2
Cancel	I < Back Next > Finish

- 1. Click to select the field by which you want to group your data. You may not see this page of the wizard if you are selecting data from a single table.
- 2. Click Next. The Report Wizard moves to the next page.

Report Wizard	
D 3 want to add any grouping 4	Department ID, Last Name, First Name, Salary 6
Grouping Options Cancel	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>F</u> inish

- 3. Click a field you want to group by.
- 4. Click the right-arrow to select a field; click a field and then click the left arrow to deselect a field. Use the up- and down-arrows to change the order of the groupings. If you are only using one table, this may be your first opportunity to select a field to group by.
- 5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each field you want to group by.
- 6. Click Next. The Report Wizard moves to the next page.

Report Wizard	
What sort order and summary inform	ation do you want for detail records? 1 2
	You can sort records by up to four fields, in eith r ascending or descending order.
	1 Last Name Ascending
	2 First Name Ascending
	3 Ascending
	4 Ascending
-	Summary Options 8
Car	ncel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>F</u> inish

- 1. Click the down-arrow and then select the field you want to sort by.
- 2. Click the button to choose ascending or descending order. Clicking the button toggles between Ascending and Descending. You can sort up to four levels.
- 3. Click the Summary Options button. The Summary Options window appears.

ummary Options		
What summary val	ues would you like calculated?	ОК
Field	Sum Avg Min Max	Cancel
Salary	Show Show	
	Calculate p total for su	ercent of ms

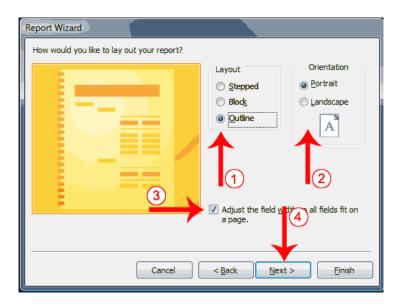
- 4. Click to select the summary data you want.
- 5. Click to select whether you want detail and summary data or if you want summary data only.
- 6. Click if you want to calculate the percent to the total for sums.

- 7. Click OK. The Summary Options window closes.
- 8. Click Next. The Report Wizard moves to the next page.

Layout and orientation

You can choose the layout and orientation of your report. The layout determines where each field appears on the page. Access provides three options to choose from: Stepped, Block, and Outline. When you choose an option, the left side of the window displays a graphic of the layout.

Orientation determines whether Access creates the report in portrait or landscape. Most paper, such as paper sized 8 1/2 by 11, is longer on one edge than it is on the other. If you print in Portrait, the shortest edge of the paper becomes the top of the page. Portrait is the default option. If you print Landscape, the longest edge of the paper becomes the top of the page.



- 1. Click to select a layout.
- 2. Click to select a page orientation.
- 3. Choose the Adjust The Field Width So All Fields Fit On A Page option if you want all fields to fit on a single page.
- 4. Click Next. The Report Wizard moves to the next page.

Create a title

On the final page of the Report Wizard, you can title your report. The title appears at the top of the report and on the Navigation pane.

Report Wizard	
	What title do you want for your report? Salaries by Department That's all the information the wizard needs to create your report. Do you want to preview the report or modify the report's design? Preview the report. Modify the report's design. 2
[Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>Finish</u>

- Type the title you want to give the report.
 Click Finish. Access creates, saves, and opens your report in Layout view.

ilaries by	y Department			
Department	Administration	Group Hea	der	
Last Name	FirstName	ID	Salary	
Applebee	Joe	1	75,000.00	
Cortez	Alice	20	32,000.00	
Cortez	Nadia	7	40,000.00	
French	Tim	2	30,000.00	
Siegel	Ben	9	20,000.00	
Taylor	George	18	150,000.00	
Summary for 'De Sum Avg Min Max Department	partment ID'= 1(6 detailrecords)			347,000.00 57,833.33 20,000.00 350,000.00 Group F
Last Name		ID	Salary	
Sanchez	Barbara	12	98,000.00	

Tip: Reports created with the Report Wizard may have the following two sections in addition to the sections found in reports created by using the Report button.

Sections of a Report	
Group Header	Appears before a group and displays information about the group.
Group Footer	Appears after a group and summarizes the group data.

Modify a Report

After you create a report, you can modify it. You can add groups or sorts, add fields, change labels, and perform many other tasks.

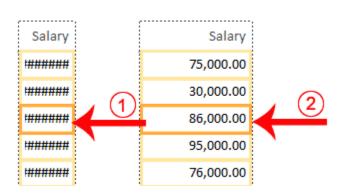
You can view a report in Report view, Layout view, Design view, and Print Preview. You can modify a report in Layout view or Design view. In Layout view, you can see your data, and the report you see closely resembles how your report will look when you print it. You can make most, but not all, changes to your report in Layout view. Design view displays the structure of your report. In this view you cannot see the underlying data, but you can perform some tasks in Design view that you cannot perform in Layout view. This tutorial focuses on Layout view.

To change to Layout view:

- 1. Open your report.
- 2. Activate the Home tab.
- 3. Click the View button. A menu appears.
- 4. Click Layout View. Access changes to Layout view.

Change the Size of a Field or Label

If the data in a field or label seems crowded, if some of the data in the field or label does not appear, or if the data appears as pound signs (####), the field or label is too small.



To change the size of a field or label:

- 1. Click the field or label. A border appears around it.
- 2. Click a side of the border and drag outward to increase the width. Click a side of the border and drag inward to decrease the width.

Tip: Incidentally, if you want to change the height of records, click the top or bottom of a field border and drag upward or downward.

Add a Group or Sort

When you create a report by clicking the Report button, you are not given options that enable you to group or sort. You can use the Group & Sort button on the Format tab to create a group or sort. When you create a report by using the Report Wizard, you can use the Group & Sort button to add or modify a group or sort.

To Group or Sort:

Open the Group, Sort, and Total pane

View	· A · B Z U · A · E E E Z ✓ 2 · I ort	Conditional Formatting 5 % % % % % % % % % % % % % % % % % % %	als 3 2 - Add Exiting Logo B 2 - Add Exiting Prios Add Exiting Add Exiting Add Exiting Add Exiting Add Exiting	
	Employee Salaries		Tuesday, March 10, 2009	
			4:31:18 PM	
	Last Name	First Name	Salary	
	Applebee	Joe	75,000.00	
	French	Tim	30,000.00	
	Jordan	Jen	86,000.00	
	Selge	Tam	95,000.00	
	Logan	Martin	76,000.00	
Pan	Cortez	Nadia	40,000.00	
Navigation Pane	Freedman	not	55,000.00	
de la	Siegel	Ben Mitchell	20,000.00	
2	Johnson Norton	Tom	77,000.00 77,000.00	
			98,000.00	
	Sanchez Williams	Barbara Linda	78,000.00	
		Linda	78,000.00	
IP.	roup, Sort. and Total			
		(4)→ @= Add a group 21	Add a sort 🗲 5	

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Activate the Format tab.
- 3. Click Group & Sort in the Grouping and Totals group. The Group, Sort, and Total pane appears.

Add a group

Navigation Pane	Logan Cortez Freedman Siegel Johnson Norton Sanchez Williams	Last Name Pert Name	Martin Nadia Jon Ben Mitchell Sarbara Linda	76,000.00 40,000.00 55,000.00 20,000.00 77,000.00 79,000.00 98,000.00 78,000.00	Ţ
Gn	oup, Sort, and Total	Prist Name Salary expression			× • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

4. Click Add A Group and then select the field by which you want to group. Access groups and sorts the field.

Add a sort

xx []	Employee Salaries			×
	Employee Salar	ies	Tuesday, March 10, 2009 4:53:51 PM	
	Last Name	First Name	Salary	1
	Applebee	eol	75,000.00	L
	Caltlin	Sheryl	111,000.00	
2	Conter	Nadia	40,000.00	
Navigation Pane	Franklin	Alice	32,000.00	
ž.		Janet	45,000.00	
	Freedman	5	103,000.00	
	Last Name First Name	Jon	55,000.00	
	Group, Sort, and Total Salary	`		Х
	Group on Last Name			* * X
Layout	View expression			000

5. Click Add A Sort and then select the field on which you want to sort. Access sorts the field.

Groups and sorts display in the Group, Sort, and Total pane in levels. Access performs the highest-level group or sort first, the second level next, and so on.

Group, Sort, and Total	X
Group on Last Name * with A on top * / More >	♦ ♦ X
[] # Add a group] 2] Add a sort	

Vers	■ Z-Q 新茶茶茶 ズ	- Sto 18,22	Formatting	∑ Totals - Group A Set Grouping & Totals	Gridlines	Logo B 2 - Add Disting	AutoFormat	
•	Comployee Salaries							
ŀ	Er Er	nployee Salari	es			Tuesday, March 10, 2009 5:14:21 PM		
	Last Name		First Name			Salary		
l	Last Name A Applebee Last Name C		Joe			75,000.00		
	Caitlin		Sheryl			111,000.00		
	Cortez		Alice			32,000.00		
8	Cortez		Nadia			40,000.00		
Navigation Pane	Last Name F							
i i	Franklin		Janet			45,000.00		
\$	Franklin		Britney			103,000.00		
2	French		Tim			30,000.00		
	Freedman		Jon			55,000.00		
	Last Name H							
	iroup, Sort, and Total							
	Group on Last Nat	ee * with A on top * , by f section * , do not keep 🔘		nat Name Astalant 🦜 - mitri 71 - Lanid M	tile Lost Never . with	n header neckon 🔻 2		* * X
	DE Add a group	2 Add a sort	by first character by first two characters					

After you have added a group or sort, you can set several options by clicking the More button and then clicking the down-arrow next to each option and making your choices.

Group, S	Sort, and Total Pane Options
Option	Description
Sort order With A on top From smallest to largest From oldest to newest	Use these options to choose from ascending or descending order.
Group interval	Set how you want to group. For example, if you want to group by the first letter of the last name so that all As are together, all Bs are together. etc., you can select By First Character.
Totals	Select the field you want to total on and the type of total you want. Your total can be a sum, average, count, etc. You can also choose whether you want to show a grand total, totals as a percentage of a grand total, display totals in the header, or display totals in the footer.
Title	Allows you to add or change

	the field label.
With or without a header section	Group headers precede each group. This option allows you to determine whether you want a header section.
With or without a footer section	Group footers are printed at the bottom of each group. This option allows you to determine whether you want a footer section.
Keep group together	Use these options to determine where a page break will occur when you print: Do not keep group together on one page. This option allows page breaks within a group. Keep whole group together on one page. This option prevents page breaks within a group. Keep header and first record together on one page. This option prevents a header from printing at the bottom of a page with no records.

There are three buttons on the right side of the Group, Sort, and Total pane. If you want to delete a group or sort, click the group or sort you want to delete and then click the Delete button. Groups and sorts execute in the order they are listed in the Group, Sort, and Total pane. If you want to change the order of execution, click the group or sort you want to move up or down and then click the Move Up or Move Down button to move a group or sort up or down a level.

To add a field:

	Hane Creat		ess 2007) - Microsoft Ac., Report Lay tabase Tools Acrobat Format	Suit Isob
	■ (ビー型) ● (基) 第一型 (J	· A · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Pormatting *	Totals p & Totals Geoderary Constructions Const
13	Salaries by Depa	etment		× Field Lise
	Salaries	by Departm	ent	Fields available for this vie 10 Lost Name First Name Salary Department Department
	Departmen	nt Administ	ation	
	ID	Last Name	First Name	Salary
	1	Applebee	Joe	75,000.00
	20	Contez	Alice	32,000.00
	7	Cortez	Nadia	40,000.00
	2	French	Tim	30,000.00
	9	Siegel	Ben	20.000.00
	18	Taylor	George	150,000.00
	Sum Avg Min Max			347,000.00 57,833.33 20,000.00 150,000.00
	Departmen	nt Compute	r Science	
	10	Last Name	First Name	Salary
	24	Franklin	Britney	103,000.00
	21	Hope	Mark	98.00
	12	Sanchez	Barbara	98,00 4
		0.000	*	or one of the show all tables

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Activate the Format tab.
- 3. Click the Add Existing Fields button in the Controls group. The Field List pane appears.
- 4. Click Show All Tables if the field you want to add does not appear.

	Salaries by Depart	by Department					Field (uit) Fields available for this view: Departments Edit Table Department ID Department Field (uit)
	Department	Administration				1	1D First Name Last Name Sex
	iD ID	Last Name	First Name	Sex	Sala	1	Street Address
	1	Applebee	Joe	M	0,000.00		City State
	20	Contez	Alice	F	32,000.00	ч	Postal Code
	7	Contez	Nadia	F	40,000.00		Department Salary
	2	French	Tim	M	30,000.00		Date of Birth
	9	Siegel	Ben	M	20,000.00		
	18	Taylor	George	м	150,000.00		
	Sum Avg Min Max				347,000.00 57,833.33 20,000.00 150,000.00		Fields available in other tables
	Department	Computer Scien	ce				Courses Edit Table DE Students Edit Table
	ID	Last Name	First Name	Sex	Salary		Enrolled Students Edit Tab
	24	Franklin	Britney	F	103,000.00		Student Addresses Edit, Tak Students Edit, Table
	21	Hope	Mark	м	98,000.00		
	12	Sanchez	Barbara	F	98,000.00		
13	,	Puter	T		AF AAA AA	*	Show only fields in the current record source

5. Click the field you want to add and drag it onto your report. A thick line appears on the report. Access places the field before the line. If you want the field to appear in the detail area, be sure to drag it to the detail area.

To delete a field:

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Click the field you want to delete.
- 3. Press the Delete key. Access deletes the field.

To move a column:

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Click the column label.
- 3. Drag the column to the new location. Access moves the column to the new location.

To change a title:

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Double-click in the Title field.
- 3. Click and drag to select the current title.
- 4. Type a new title.
- 5. Click anywhere outside the Title field. Access changes the title.

To change a field label:

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Double-click the field label.
- 3. Click and drag to select the label name.
- 4. Type the new label name.
- 5. Click anywhere outside the label. Access changes the field label.

To change the paper size:

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Activate the Page Setup tab.
- 3. Click the Size button in the Page Layout group. A menu appears.
- 4. Click the size of the paper you are going to print on.

To change paper orientation:

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Activate the Page Setup tab.
- 3. Click Portrait or Landscape to choose the orientation you want to use. Access changes the page orientation.

To change margins:

1. Open your report in Layout view.

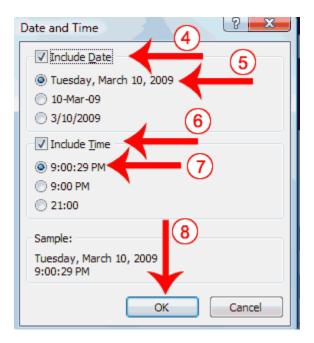
- 2. Activate the Page Setup tab.
- 3. Click the Margins button in the Page Layout group. A menu appears.
- 4. Click the margin size you want. Access changes the page margin.

To add page numbers:

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Activate the Format tab.
- 3. Click the Insert Page Number button in the Controls group. The Page Numbers dialog box appears.
- 4. Click a radio button to choose a format.
- 5. Click a radio button to choose a position.
- 6. Click the down-arrow in the Alignment field and then choose an alignment.
- 7. Deselect Show Number On First Page if you do not want the page number to appear on the first page.
- 8. Click OK. Access places the page number in your report.

To add current date or time:

- 1. Open your report in Layout view.
- 2. Activate the Format tab.
- 3. Click the Date and Time button ¹⁵⁵ in the Controls group. The Date and Time dialog box appears.



- 4. Deselect the Include Date box if you do not wish to include the date.
- 5. Click to select a format if you are including the date.
- 6. Deselect the Include Time box if you do not wish to include the time.
- 7. Click to select a format if you are including the time.

8. Click OK. Access places the date and/or time in your report.

Apply an AutoFormat

You can use the AutoFormat option on the Format tab to apply formats such as background colors, fonts, and font sizes quickly.

To apply an AutoFormat:

- 1. Activate the Format tab.
- 2. Click AutoFormat. The AutoFormat menu appears.
- 3. Click the format you want to apply.

Change Fonts and Formats

You can use options on the Format tab to manually apply formats to your report. You must select the field or field label by clicking it before you apply. To select multiple items, hold down the Shift key and then click each item you want to select. A box surrounds selected items.

Change Fonts an	d Formats	
Button	Shor tcut Key	Function
Layout View—For	mat Tab, Font Grou	лр
Arial		Apply a font to the current selection.
10 -		Set the size of the font for the current selection.
в	Ctrl-b	Bold the current selection.
I	Ctrl-i	Italicize the current selection.
U	Ctrl-u	Underline the current selection.
E	Ctrl-I	Left-align the selection.
3	Ctrl-r	Right-align the selection.
≣	Ctrl-e	Center the selection.
A		Change the font color.
<u>&</u>		Change the background color.

	Change the alternating color. For example, you can have every other row in the detail area appear in alternating colors.
Layout View—For	mat Tab, Formatting Group Apply a Number
Standard 👻	Apply a Number format.
\$	Use a currency symbol.
%	Change to percent.
,	Use thousand separators.
*-0 .00	Increase decimal places.
-00 →.0	Decrease decimal places.
Layout View—For	mat Tab, Gridlines Group
	Add gridlines.
=	Change the weight of gridlines.
	Change the style of gridlines.
<u>.</u>	Change the color of gridlines.
Layout View—For	mat Tab, Controls Group
	Add a logo.
	Add a title.
3	Set line thickness.
=	Set line style.
	Set line color.

Tip: After you modify your report, you must save it if you want to keep the changes. To save, click the Save button on the Quick Access toolbar or right-click the report's tab and then click Save.

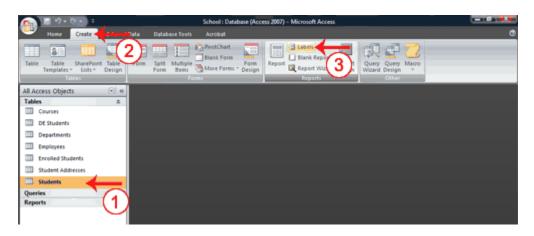
Create Mailing Labels

In Access, the easiest way to create a mailing label is to use the Label Wizard. The Label Wizard extracts name and address data from your database and formats it so you can print it on commercially available labels.

Each time you view or print labels, the data are extracted from the database, so as you update your database, Access updates your labels.

To create labels:

Open the Labels Wizard



- 1. Click the table or query you want to use to create a label.
- 2. Activate the Create tab.
- 3. Click Labels in the Reports group. The Labels Wizard appears.

Choose a product number

Most commercially available labels have a product number. You should be able to find the number on the box. You use the product number to tell Access the dimensions of your labels and the number of columns and rows that are on a page.

This wizard creates standard labels or custom labels. What label size would you like? Product number: Dimensions: Number across: 5095 2 1/3" x 3 3/8" 2 2 3/4" x 2 3/4" 3 5097 1 1/2" x 4" 2 5159 1 1/2" x 4" 2 5159 1 1/2" x 4" 2 5159 1 1/2" x 4" 2 5160 1 x 2 5/8" 3 Unit of Measure Label Type Continuous Filter by manufacturer: Avery 2 Customize Show cus pm label sizes

- 1. Click to select the Product Number in the Product Number field.
- 2. Click Next. The Label Wizard moves to the next page.

Choose a font, font size, font weight, and color

A font is a set of characters (text) represented in a single typeface. Each character within a font is created by using the same basic style. The Label Wizard has options that allow you to select a font, font size, weight, and color. You can also choose to italicize or underline the text in your labels.

Label Wizard	What font and color would you like	(1) (2)
Sample	What font and color would you like Text appearance Font name: Arial Font weight:	Font size:
Sample	Normal	3 4
	Cancel < Back	7 Next > Enish

- 1. Click the down-arrow next to the Font Name field and then select the font. A preview appears in the Sample box.
- 2. Click the down-arrow next to the Font Size field and then select the font size. A preview appears in the Sample box.
- 3. Click the down-arrow next to the Font Weight field and then select the font weight. A preview appears in the Sample box.
- 4. Click the button next to the Text Color field and then select a color you want your text to have. A preview appears in the Sample box.
- 5. Click the Italic box if you want to italicize. A preview appears in the Sample box.
- 6. Click the Underline box if you want to underline. A preview appears in the Sample box.
- 7. Click Next. The Label Wizard moves to the next page.

Create a layout

You create the layout of your labels by selecting fields and placing them in the Prototype Label box. You type any text or spaces that you want to appear on your label.

Label Wizard	
/	What would you like on your mailing label? Construct your label on the right by choosing fields from the left. You may also type text that you would like to see on every label right onto the prototype.
Available fields:	Prototype label:
Street Address City State Postal Code Country Phone Number	<pre>{First Name} {Last Name} {Street Address} {City}, {State} {Postal Code}</pre>
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>F</u> inish

- 1. Click a field name and then click the right-arrow to place the field on the prototype label.
- 2. Press the spacebar to leave spaces.
- 3. Press the Enter key to move to a new line.
- 4. Type any text you want to appear on the label.
- 5. Click Next. The Label Wizard moves to the next page.

Sort

When creating labels, you can sort on any field and you can have multiple levels of sort. For example, you can sort by last name and then by first name.

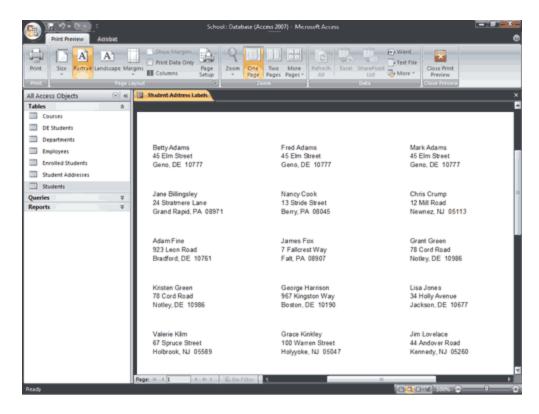
You can sort your labels by one or more fields in your database. You might want to sort by more than one field (such as last name, then first name), or by just one field (such as postal code). Which fields would you like to sort by? Available fields: Sort by: ID Street Address It City State Postal Code It Country Phone Number Mobile Number It	Label Wizard	I		
	2	want to sort by more than one just one field (such as postal co Which fields would you like to s Available fields: ID Street Address City State Postal Code Country Phone Number	field (such as last nam ode). ort by? Sort by Sort by Last Na First Na	ne, then first name), or by
Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>F</u> inish		Cancel	< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Einish

- 1. Click to choose the fields you want to sort by. Click the single right-arrow to select a single field, click the double right-arrow to select all fields, click the single left-arrow to deselect a single field, click the double left-arrow to deselect all fields.
- 2. Click Next. The Label Wizard moves to the next page.

Label Wizard		
	What name would you like for your ref Student Address Labels That's all the information the wizard needs to create your labels! What do you want to do? See the labels as they will look printed. Modify the label design.	
	Cancel < Back Next >	Einish

Title the report

- 1. Type a title for your report. The title will appear in the Navigation pane.
- 2. Click Finish. Access displays the labels in Print Preview.



Tip: When you complete your labels you may get the following message.

When printing mailing labels, you can usually ignore this message. Click the Show Help button

This message may be the result of using a report created with the Label Wizard. This error message is commonly encountered when printing to label pages that have three or more labels per row. Usually this message can be ignored. If you do need to change the layout, try one or both of the following:

- Reduce the width of the controls on the report.
- Reduce the width of the report to make sure the report is not wider than the printable area of the page.

Note that page size is dependent on the printer and the physical size of the paper you are printing to. In some cases it is necessary to rotate the page orientation from portrait to landscape to accommodate the selected print width.

to read the following:

Tip: When you view labels in Report view, they may appear in a single column. To see how your labels will appear when printed, use Print Preview.

Print a Report

In Print Preview, you can see exactly how your report will look when printed, you can make changes to it, and you can print it. To print, click the Print button in the Print group. The Print dialog box opens and you can select your print options.

After creating a report, you have many options to print it. The fastest option consists of sending the report directly to the printer. To do this:

- In the Navigation Pane, right-click the report and click Print...
- Click File and click Print. This would display a window with three options:

Save	Print	
😡 Save Object As 🎒 Save Database As 🚰 Open		Quick Print Send the object directly to the default print without making changes.
 Close Database College Park Auto College Park Auto 		Print Select a printer, number of copies, and othe printing options before printing.
) College Park Auto 의 College Park Auto Info	Q	Print Preview Preview and make changes to pages before printing.
Recent		
New		

To send the document directly to the printer, click Quick Print.

Change to Print Preview:

- 1. Open your report.
- 2. Activate the Home tab.
- 3. Click the down-arrow under the View button. A menu appears.
- 4. Click Print Preview. Access changes to Print Preview.

Several options are available to you in Print Preview.

Print Preview Options	
Print	Displays the Print dialog box. You can select such options as the printer, print range, and number of copies. Use this option to print your report.
Size	Click the Size button to set the size of the paper you are going to print on.

Portrait	Click the Portrait button to print with the shortest side of the paper as the top.	
Landsca pe	Click the Landscape button to print with the longest side of the paper as the top.	
Margins	Click the Margins button to select a margin size of Normal, Wide, or Narrow. Margins define the amount of white space that surrounds your report.	
Print Data Only	Prints the report data without other elements such as titles, and labels.	
Zoom	Changes the cursor to a magnifying glass. When the magnifying glass displays a minus sign (–), you can zoom out. When the magnifying glass displays a plus sign (+), you can zoom in. Click the down-arrow under the Zoom button to display a menu and choose a zoom level.	
One Page	Displays one page of the report in the Access window.	
Two Page	Displays two pages of the report in the Access window.	
More Pages	Displays a menu from which you can choose the number of page you want to display.	

Tip: To view a report online, use Report view. Open your report. Activate the Home tab. Click the down-arrow under the View button. Click Report view. Your report displays in Report view.